# AAMail 5.0 User Manual

# v1.1

2014/03/25

# 1 Quick Start

In this part, we will mainly introduce how to create a mail server system in Windows environment quickly.

It is very easy to create a mail server system with AAMail server. And you can quickly create a simple mail server system to receive and send emails by following the instructions below.

Steps:

- 1) Check whether you have installed IIS (If you want to test Webmail function, then you have to install IIS).
- 2) Install AAMail `server software.
- 3) Configure database.
- 4) Create domain name.
- 5) Create account.
- 6) Login Webmail.
- 7) Receive and send emails via Outlook or Foxmail (If you want to test whether Outlook or Foxmail can receive and send emails successfully, you have to do some related configurations.)

For details, please refer to the following articles.

- 1. System Requirement
- 2. Install IIS
- 3. Install AAMail Server
- 4. Create Domain Name
- 5. Create Account
- 6. Login Webmail

## **1.1 System Requirement**

Hardware	Recommendation	Description
CPU	Celeron or above	AAMail is undemanding on CPU.
RAM	4G or above	The bigger of the RAM the better.

Hard Disk	1T or above	The email volume is growing, so the bigger of the
OS	Windows	hard disk space the better. Windows 2000/2003/2008 Server, we recommend Windows 2003.
Database	SQL Server	Access or SQL Server 2000/2005/2008, we
Antivirus	No Requirement	AVG/Kaspersky/Rav, we recommend AVG.

For most enterprise users, we recommend Windows 2003 Enterprise Edition + SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition/Enterprise Edition. For the AAMail trial users, we recommend Windows OS + Microsoft Access.

**Note:** Please do not install AAMail server on the Web server (Website). If you install AAMail server on the Web server, there may be some unexpected problems.

## **1.2 Checking IIS Installation**

If you want to use AAMail's Webmail, then you need to install Windows IIS first. If you don't install IIS, you cannot use the Webmail to receive and send the emails successfully. Normally, IIS is installed by default on Windows 2003. If it isn't, please refer to "Install Windows IIS".

#### How to Check IIS Installation

Click the "Start" button, and then click "Administrator Tools". If you can see "Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager" here, then it proves that the IIS has been installed. Click the "Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager" and it will open the "Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager" (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

**Note:** During the processes of installing IIS, please do not select the "SMTP Server" in the "Web Services" check box. If you selected "SMTP Server", it will cause the conflict of Port 25, and then, you can not send the emails.

## 1.3 Install AAMail Server

It is very easy to install AAMail server. Click the "Next" button until finish. The setup wizard of AAMail is very helpful, you just need to follow the instructions until finish the processes. The specific operation steps are as follows.

1) Download AAMail installation package from http://www.aamailsoft.com/download.htm. And then double click it to install AAMail server. Normally, keep click the "Next" button until finish (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

2) Double click AAMail desktop icon. For the first time to run this program, it will pop up the "AAMail Setup Wizard" dialog box. Then, click the "Next" button (Figure 1-2).

AAMail Setup Wizard
AAmail for Windows
AAMail 5.0.20130501
Step 1. Select and configure database.
Step 2. Configure webmail parameters
Step 3. Configure system parameters SMTP/POP3
Step 4. Startup tips on what to do next.
Back Next Cancel

Figure 1-2

3) Please select the "Microsoft Access (Quick trial)", and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-3). If you have installed SQL Server, you can also select "Microsoft SQL Server", and then click the "Configure" button to set SQL Server's connection parameters.

AAMail Setup Wizard
Step 1. Select database Microsoft Access is suitable for product trial or small business. Usually Microsoft SQL Server is recommended.
Microsoft Access Quick trial)
Which database is suitable for my business?
Download SQL Server Express edition and Managerment studio.
How to install SQL Server 2005 Express?
Back Next Cancel

Figure 1-3

4) In later steps, normally, you can keep its default settings, and keep click the "Next" button until finish. Then you can see the AAMail main interface as Figure 1-4.

AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)											
Operation Account Tool Settings Help											
🚨 Account 💿 Group (	🊨 Account 🗇 Group 🜖 Domain 🛛 🎡 Service 🔀 Settings 💧 🏠 Purchase 🔀 Shutdown										
Account Status	Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume			
	•							F.			
[15:52:13]-[System] Ver=5.0.2013050	)1, Win7[64] - Access, Welco	me!									
[15:52:13]-[System] Services: SendM [15:52:13]-[System] LAN=192:168:1	lail(20), POP3Remote(5), Adm 105 192 168 101 1 192 168	in=8025, POP3=1 107 1	110, SMTP1=2	5, SMTP2=0							
restant of topological and topological	,										
System A SMIP A PUP3		ming/				0010.0	7.05 4	5 50 00			
Ready Iotal=0						2013-0	17-05 1	5:52:33			

Figure 1-4

After operating as the above steps, a standard mail server system has been mostly

created. The next steps are to create domain name and account, and you can receive and send emails then.

## 1.4 Create Domain Name

 After running AAMail server, on the toolbar, click the "Domain" button. In the pop up "Create domain step 1/4" dialog box, type the domain name (such as "youngzsoft.com") into the "Domain name" edit box, and keep others as the default settings, then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-1).

🕑 AAMail Server 5.0	).20130501 (Trial ve	rsion will expir	re after 0 days	s)					
Operation Account	t Tool Settings	Help							
🚨 Account 🖾 G	roup 🕥 Domain	🎡 Service	🔀 Settings	🚖 Purchase	🔀 Shuta	down			
Account Status	Account	N @	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	٧
		<u>س</u>							
	Create domain ste	ep 1/4			2	×			-
	-Basic settings	·		<b>k</b>	_				-
		Domain name	youngzsoft.	com	📃 Disa	abled			_
		Main domain		-	Ali 🛛	is is			-
	Click for help	Domain type	Standard ma	il server mode	_	-			
	Default	. mailbox size	1024	(M)					-
	Doms	in max volume	0	(M) 📃 Limite	d volume				
	Ac	count maximum	0	📃 Limited nu	mber 🥢	3			-
			Back	. Next	<u> </u>	ancel		,	•
[15:52:13]-[System] Ver=5	) .0.20130301, WIN7[64]	I-Access, welco	mei						
[15:52:13]-[System] Servi [15:52:13]-[System] LAN=	ces: SendMail(20), POF =192.168.1.105, 192.16	'3Remote(5), Adm 8.101.1.192.168.	in=8025, POP3= 107.1	110, SMTP1=25, SI	MTP2=0				
Sustem SMTD	POP2 Bemata	Outgoing \ Inc.	ming /					-	e
Beady Tota			/////			2012 /	17-05	15,54,10	
We Ready Tota	1-0					2013-0		13.34.19	

Figure 1-1

- 2) Normally, you can keep click the "Next" button until finish creating the domain name.
- 3) When you create the new domain name, AAMail will help you auto create a group account and two frequently-used admin accounts. Type the password for those accounts into the "Password for above accounts" and "Please input password again" edit boxes. Then, click the "OK" button to finish creating domain name (Figure 1-2).

Create domain step 3/4	×
Create accounts These accounts will have same initial passwords. W Auto create group: everyone@youngzsoft.com Auto create account: admin@youngzsoft.com Auto create account: nostmaster@youngzsoft.com	
Password for above accounts • Please input password again •	
Back OK Ca	ncel

Figure 1-2

Up to this point, the domain name of AAMail has created and it supports multiple domain names. If you only use AAMail as "LAN Mail Server", then you can add the domain name as you wish (such as 123.com, 456.net); if you want to use AAMail as "Internet Mail Server", then you have to register and purchase the domain name from the Internet domain registration company.

There are no default settings of AAMail domain names. Every domain name is an individual one, but you can send and receive emails among domain names.

## 1.5 Create Account

1) On the toolbar, click the "Account" button (Figure 1-1).

🧭 AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)											
Operation Account Tool Settings Help											
🚨 Account 🗇 Group 🕥 Domain   🎡 Service 💢 Settings   🛬 Purchase 🔀 Shutdown											
Account Status	Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	V			
🕥 youngzsoft.com	🗇 everyone@youngzso	everyone		Group	(2)						
	admin@youngzsoft.c	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%				
	🊨 postmaster@youngzs	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%				
[]								-			
[15:52:13]-[System] Ver=5.0.2013050	01, Win7[64] - Access, Welcor	me!	110 OUTD1 0	E OUTEO O				*			
[15:52:13]-[System] Services: SendM [15:52:13]-[Sustem] LAN=192.168.1	Iail(20), POP3Remote(5), Admi 105-1921681011-1921681	n=8025, POP3= 107 1	110, SMTPT=2	5, SMTP2=0							
								Ŧ			
System SMTP POP3	$\setminus$ Remote $\lambda$ Outgoing $\lambda$ Inco	ming /									
Ready Total=3					2013-	07-05	15:58:25	at			

Figure 1-1

 In the pop up "Account creation wizard" dialog box, type the account, password and user name into their corresponding edit box, and keep other settings as default values. Then, keep click the "Next" button until finishing creating account (Figure 1-2).

Account creation wiza	rd	
Basic information	1/3	
G	Account	panyang 🔘 youngzsoft.com 🔻
Click for help	Password	•••••
Disabled	Vser name	panyang
M	ailbox size	1024 📝 Limited (M)
Ac	count alias	
A	.ccount type	Normal account
	Manager	<b></b>
		Back Next Cancel

Figure 1-2

It is very easy to create AAMail account, and you can set the related permissions for the account when you create it (Such as limit mailbox size, account permissions, receive from Internet, send to Internet, allow login Webmail, allow change password and max

mail size when sending to Internet etc. For details, please refer to "Create Mail Account".

## 1.6 Webmail Login

The <u>Webmail</u> function of AAMail is a focus design of Youngzsoft, which brings together designers' wisdom and hardships. Webmail owns the functions and advantages that the third party <u>client software</u> (such as Outlook) never has. For example, Webmail can send and receive emails whenever and wherever possible, while you need to install Outlook firstly, and then configure it to send and receive emails. What's more, Webmail supports account permission management, but Outlook does not have this function.



The Webmail Login Interface (Figure 1-1)

Figure 1-1

Suppose your AAMail local IP is 192.168.1.253, normally, you can open Webmail by type http://192.168.1.253/mail in the address bar of the browser.

# **2** User Interface Introduction

## 2.1 AAMail Main Interface

The main interface of AAMail can be divided into 5 parts, namely, Menu Bar, Toolbar, Account List, Status List and Information List (Figure 1-1).

🧟 Account 🗇 Group 🌖	Domain 🛛 🛞 Service	🔀 Settings	🚖 Purchase	💥 Shutdown		Toolbar
Account Status	Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used
🕂 🕥 test.com 🔺	everyone@test.com	everyone		Group	(4)	
	admin@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M
	♣ mimosa@test.com	Mimosa		Account	1/1	0.1M
Status List Tab	postmaster@test.com	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M
	Support@test.com	sylvia		Account	1/1	0.1M
Account List Tab		_				
	•					
	317 Win7[64] - Access Welco	mel				
10:47:29]-[System] Services: NOT	installed, Stopped!	and:	le le	formation I	ist	
10:47:03]-[System] LAN=172.16.36	6.2, 192.168.1.126, 192.168.1(	01.1, 192.168.10	07.1			
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		,				
System 🖌 SMTP 🔪 POP3	$\lambda$ Remote $\lambda$ Outgoing $\lambda$ Inc	oming /				

Figure 1-1

**Account List:** Display the information of Account List, Account, User name, Department, Type, Inbox/All, Used, Ratio and Volume etc.

**Status List:** Display the information of Status List, Mail ID, Mail from, Mail to, Retries, Size, Next try and Message etc.

Information List: Including the System, SMTP, POP3. Remote, Outgoing and Incoming.

Double click "Ready" to refresh AAMail interface; Double click "Total", it will pop up the "Account search" dialog box; Double click "Date", it will pop up AAMail file catalog; Double click "Time", it will pop up the IIS Manager.

## 2.2 **Operation Menu**

The Operation Menu includes Refresh, Service, Log analysis, Import from file, Upgrade, System backup, System restore, Hide, Hide & lock and Shutdown (Figure 1-1).

94	AMail Server 5.0.2	013050	1 (Trial version will expir	e after 0 days	;)					×
Op	eration Account	Tool	Settings Help							
2	Refresh		Domain 🛛 💮 Service	Domain 🛛 🎡 Service 🛛 🔀 Settings 🛛 🚖 Purchase 🗶 Shutdown						
<b>E</b>	Service		Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	V
	Log analysis		🗇 everyone@youngzso	everyone		Group	(2)			
	T 6 6:1.		🊨 admin@youngzsoft.c	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	
	Import from file		🊨 postmaster@youngzs	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	
L.	oberare									
	System backup									
	System restore									
•	Hi de	Esc								
	Hide & lock									
×	Shutdown	F12								
-										
			•	III						•
(15:5 (15:5 (15:5	2:13]-[System] Ver=5.0 :2:13]-[System] Service: :2:13]-[System] LAN=19	.2013050 s: SendM 32.168.1.1	01, Win7[64] - Access, Welco Iail(20), POP3Remote(5), Adm 105, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.	ne! in=8025, POP3=` 107.1	110, SMTP1=2	5, SMTP2=0				*
										-
\ Sj	vstem 🖌 SMTP 🔪 I	POP3)	Remote $\lambda$ Outgoing $\lambda$ Inco	ming /						
۵	Ready Total=	3					2013-	07-05	16:12:44	H

Figure 1-1

Refresh: Refresh AAMail interface.

Service: Pop up AAMail "Service manager" dialog box.

**Log analysis:** You can search the log via Date, Time, Log type, Account and Keyword. Also, you can open the Folder to check the log and Export the log files. For details, please refer to "<u>How to Check AAMail Log</u>".

**Import from file:** Import accounts from file. Account file should be .csv format with header line and below fields.

**Upgrade:** Pop up the "Upgrade wizard" dialog box. Click the "Upgrade" combo box, and select the old version, then click the "Next" button. For details, please refer to "<u>AAMail</u> <u>Upgrade Steps</u>".

System backup: System data backup. Backup system parameters and accounts.

System restore: System data restore. Services will be stopped during restore.

Hide: Minimize to the notification area.

**Hide & lock:** Minimize to the notification area, and need the Account and Password to login (The original Account it "Administrator", and don't need Password). **Shutdown:** Logout AAMail.

## 2.3 Account Menu

On the menu bar, click the "Account" button, then, you can the functions of New account, New group, Edit/View account, Delete account, Find account, Clear sendings, Clear mails, Drop history mails, Send mail, POP3 retrieve, Group relations, Supervising list and Monitored list (Figure 1-1). For details, please refer to "Account Properties".

🕖 AAMail S	erve	r 5.0.201305	01 (Trial vers	ion will expir	e after 0 day	s)				,	×
Operation	Acc	ount Tool	Settings H	lelp							
a Accourt	2	New account	. <b>F</b> 2	Service	🔀 Settings	💧 ት Purcha	ase 💢 Shuto	down			
Account	ø	New group	F3		User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	V
🔰 🌍 young		Edit/View a	lecount	youngzso	everyone		Group	(2)			
	×	Delete acco	unt	ingzsoft.c	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	
	P	Find accoun	ıt	@youngzs…	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	
		Clear sendi	ngs								
		Clear mails	:								
		Drop histor	y mails								
		Send mail	F7	-							
		POP3 retrie	ve F8								
		Group relat	ions								
		Supervising	; list								
		Monitored 1	ist								
	_			4							
			<								•
[15:52:13]-[Sy:	stem] '	Ver=5.0.201305	501, Win7[64] - /	Access, Welcor	ne!						*
[15:52:13]-[Sy: [15:52:13]-[Su:	stem] : stem]	Services: Send AN=192 168 1	Mail(20), POP3F 105-192-168-1	lemote(5), Admi 01 1 192 168 1	n=8025, POP3= 107 1	:110, SMTP1=2	25, SMTP2=0				
[10.02.10][0]		3 111 102.100.1		01.1, 102.100.							
											Ŧ
System 🖌	SMT	Р 👌 РОРЗ	$\lambda$ Remote $\lambda$ C	lutgoing $\lambda$ Inco	ming /						
Read     Read	ly 1	Total=3 24	4=admin@yo	ungzsoft.cor	n			2013-	07-05	16:15:26	

Figure 1-1

New account: Go to "Account creation wizard".

New group: Add a new mail group. For details, please refer to "Mail Group".

**Edit/View account:** Go to "Account" properties. For details, please refer to "<u>Create Mail</u> <u>Account</u>".

**Delete account:** Select one or more accounts and delete them (Group belongs to Account as well).

Find account: Search account via Account No., Account Name and Account Alias etc.

**Clear sendings:** Delete the selected account's sending mails. For details, please refer to "Clear Sendings".

Clear mails: Permanently delete the selected account's all mails on the server.

**Drop history mails:** Permanently delete the selected account's all mails before the specified date. For details, please refer to "<u>Drop History Mails</u>".

Send mail: Administrator can send emails to the specified account directly.

POP3 retrieve: Receive remote mails immediately, POP3 interactions will be displayed.

Group relations: View the selected account or group belongs to which mail group.

**Supervising list:** View the monitor is monitoring which accounts.

Monitored list: View the selected account is monitored by which monitors.

## 2.4 Tool Menu

On the menu bar, click the "Tool" button, then you can see the functions of Go to IIS, Reset Windows IIS, Visit Webmai, Reinstall Webmail, Advanced SQL Execute, Compact database, Diagnose wizard, Diagnose sending, Diagnose RBL, Diagnose MX (Figure 1-1).

AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)									
Operation Account	Too	ol Settings Help							
🚨 Account 🛛 Gro	C	Visit Webmail F9	Settings 🕻	💧 🏝 Purcha	ase 🔀 Shuto	lown			
Account Status		Reinstall Webmail	lser name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	V
youngzsoft.com		Goto IIS	everyone		Group	(2)			
		Reset Windows IIS	iministrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	
	<>	Advanced SQL Execute	ostmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	
	-	Compact database	-						
	Ŧ	Diagnose wizard							
		Diagnose sending							
		Diagnose RBL							
		Diagnose MX							
	_		_						
		•							•
ME-E0:101/Curters11/cs_E.0	10011	20E01 MarZICAL Assess Middlesses	-1						
[15:52:13];[System] Ver=5.0.20130001, Win/[64] - Access, Welcomer [15:52:13];[System] Services: SendMail(20), POP3Remote(5), Admin=8025, POP3=110, SMTP1=25, SMTP2=0 [15:52:13];[System] LAN=192.168.1.105, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1							Î		
								-	
System SMTP	POP3	$ ightarrow$ $\lambda$ Remote $\lambda$ Outgoing $\lambda$ Incom	ing/						
Ready         Total=3         24=admin@youngzsoft.com         2013-07-05         16:16:35							ti		

Figure 1-1

**Go to IIS:** Go to IIS interface (if the <u>OS</u> is different, so is the IIS), and it is convenient to manage the Webmail sites.

**Reset Windows IIS:** Reset Windows IIS, which equals to execute iisreset command under the administrator permission's command line window.

Visit Webmail: Click it to open the browser, and enter the "Webmail Login Interface".

**Reinstall Webmail:** Enable or disable Webmail, reset the virtual directory's name, and select different "<u>Webmail Login Mode</u>".

**Advanced SQL Execute:** Supported by AAMail technology, with this function, you can do some advanced operations to the database directly.

**Compact database:** Specially applied to Access database. By compacting Access database regularly, the Access database can keep running stably.

**Diagnose wizard:** Including diagnose MX, sending mails, international RBL and form a diagnose report. For details, please refer to "<u>Diagnose Function</u>".

**Diagnose sending:** Supports diagnosing sending mails, and it will display the details of SMTP interaction log records, which is convenient to target the sending problems.

**Diagnose RBL:** Supports diagnosing whether the server or specified IP address has been listed on RBL.

**Diagnose MX:** Open the online diagnose website of <u>MX records</u> on <u>http://www.aamailsoft.com/mx.php</u>, and detect the MX records settings.

## 2.5 Settings Menu

On the menu bar, click the "Settings" button, then you can see the functions of Domain settings, Server settings, Database settings, Anti-spam settings, ISP server settings, Admin password and Welcome mail (Figure 1-1).

AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)										
Operation Account Tool	Set	tings Help		_						
🚨 Account 🖾 Group 🤇	0	Domain settings	F4	tings	💧 🏝 Purcha	ase 🔀 Shuta	lown			
Account Status	×	Server settings	F6	ame	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	V
youngzsoft.com		Database settings		ne		Group	(2)			
	黀	Anti-spam settings		rator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	
		ISP server settings		ster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	
	3	Admin password								
		Welcome mail								
	•									*
[15:52:13]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome! [15:52:13]-[System] Services: SendMail(20), POP3Remote(5), Admin=8025, POP3=110, SMTP1=25, SMTP2=0 [15:52:13]-[System] LAN=192, 168, 1, 105, 192, 168, 101, 1, 192, 168, 107, 1							*			
										-
System & SMTP & POP3 & Remote & Outgoing & Incoming /										
Ready Total=3 24	l=ac	lmin@youngzsoft.com	-7				2013-	07-05	16:17:14	æ

Figure 1-1

**Domain settings:** Supports create, modify and delete domains. For details, please refer to "<u>Create and Manage Domain Name</u>".

**Server settings:** Pop up "Server settings" dialog box, you can set the General, Account, Mail, Network, Webmail, Logs and Advanced parameters here.

Database settings: Supports viewing database's connection information.

Anti-spam settings: Supports enabling or disabling RBL, IP address black/white list, domain/email black/white list and so on. For details, please refer to "Anti-spam Function". ISP server settings: Add, Modify and Delete the ISP accounts, set Priority and so on. For details, please refer to "ISP Function".

**Admin password:** You can modify the admin password here. And the admin password is specially used for restoring the main interface after locking.

**Welcome mail:** Compose a welcome mail for every newly added account. And you can edit the mail content here.

## 2.6 Help Menu

On the menu bar, click the "Help" button, then you can see the functions of Help, Installation folder, Remote tech support, Enter license key, Purchase and About (Figure 1-1).

AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)								
Operation Account Tool Settings Help								
🚨 Account 💿 Group (	Domain 🕝	Help	睯 Purcha	ase 🔀 Shutd	lown			
Account Status	Account	Installation folder	epartment	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	V
youngzsoft.com	🖾 everye 💂	Remote tech support		Group	(2)			
	admin A postm	Enter license key		Domain admin Account	1/1	0.1M 0.1M	0.1% 0.1%	
		Purchase		Hoodant		0.114	0.176	
		About						
			<u>.</u>					
	•	III						Þ
[15:52:13]-[System] Ver=5.0.2013050	)1, Win7[64] - Aci	cess, Welcome!						*
[15:52:13]-[System] Services: SendMail(20), POP3Remote(5), Admin=8025, POP3=110, SMTP1=25, SMTP2=0 [15:52:13]-[System] LAN=192.168.1.105, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1								
-								-
System ζ SMTP λ POP3 λ Remote λ Outgoingλ Incoming/								
Ready Total=3 24	=admin@your	ngzsoft.com			2013-	07-05	16:18:01	at

Figure 1-1

**Help:** Open AAMail FAQs website and you can find many solutions for troubles here. **Installation folder:** Open AAMail installation folder.

**Remote tech support:** Run the TeamViewer remote tool, send the ID and Password to Youngzsoft, then you can get the remote support.

**Enter license key:** Click to pop up "Registration" dialog box, type the license key to register.

**Purchase:** Click to open the purchase website of http://en.aamailsoft.com/purchase.htm And you can contact Youngzsoft to purchase or upgrade AAMail server software.

About: Display AAMail server software version and copyright information.

## **3 Firewall and Router of Mail Server**

Most of the servers have been installed firewall softwares, and then you need to enable AAMail to access the Internet in the firewall settings, and open Port 25 (SMTP), Port 110 (POP3), and Port 80 (Webmail). If you do not enable these ports in the allowed list of Firewall, AAMail will not send and receive mails successfully.

If your server is connected after the router/NAT, then you need to set Port Forwarding (also named Port Mapping) for Port 25/110/80 from router to server. If you do not map these ports to the Internet, you can send and receive mails in LAN, but not in Internet.

## 3.1 Enable AAMail in Firewall

Firewall is a device that ensures information security. It will allow or limit data transfer according to specific rules. Firewall can be an exclusive hard ware or software in a normal hard disk. It can well protect your target computers from intruders.

If firewall is turned on in your network, you need to enable AAMail to access network in your firewall, and open Port 25 (SMTP), Port 110 (POP3) and Port 80 (Webmail). If you don't allow AAMail to visit firewall, then <u>AAMail can not receive mails</u> or you <u>can't send</u> <u>mails</u> via AAMail.

### 1. Windows 2003 Firewall

- 1) Open Windows Control Panel -> Windows Firewall.
- 2) In the pop up "Windows Firewall" dialog box, click the "Exceptions" tab, and then click the "Add Port..." button (Figure 1-1).

🎉 Windows Firewall	X
General Exceptions Advanced	
Windows Firewall is turned off. Your computer is at risk of attacks and intrusions from outside sources such as the Internet. We recommend that you click the General tab and select On.	
Programs and Services:	
Name	
<ul> <li>File and Printer Sharing</li> <li>Remote Assistance</li> <li>Remote Desktop</li> <li>Sogou Pinyin Service</li> <li>UPnP Framework</li> </ul>	
Add Program Add Port Edit Delete	
Display a notification when Windows Firewall blocks a program What are the risks of allowing exceptions?	
OK Cancel	

Figure 1-1

3) In the pop up "Add a Port" dialog box, add port 25, then select the "TCP" radio button, and click the "OK" button (Figure 1-2).

A L n v	dd a Port Ise these settings umber and protoc vant to use.	to open a port through Windows Firewall. To find the port ol, consult the documentation for the program or service y	× zou
	Name: Port number:	25 25 • TCP O UDP	
N N N	Vhat are the risks Change scope	of opening a port?	

#### Figure 1-2

- 4) Repeat step 2 and 3, then add port 110 and port 80.
- 5) Back to the "Windows Firewall" dialog box, and click the "Add a Program" button.
- 6) In the pop up "Add a Program" dialog box, select "AAMail Server" and then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-3).

Add a Program	×
To allow communications with a program by adding it to the E select the program, or click Browse to search for one that is n	xceptions list, ot listed.
Programs:	
AAMail Server	<b>_</b>
🞩 FreeCell	
💙 Hearts	
🤕 Internet Backgammon	
🥘 Internet Checkers	
🤤 Internet Explorer	
🥐 Internet Hearts	
🥥 Internet Reversi	
🚑 Internet Spades	
Minesweeper	
MSN	-
Path: C:\AAMail\aamailserver.exe	Browse
Change scope OK	Cancel
Firmer 4.0	

Figure 1-3

 Up to this point, port 25, port 110, port 80 and AAMail program has been added successfully. Click the "OK" button to exit "Windows Firewall" dialog box (Figure 1-4).

≽ Windows Firewall	×
General Exceptions Advanced	
Windows Firewall is turned off. Your computer is at risk of attacks and intrusions from outside sources such as the Internet. We recommend that you click the General tab and select On.	
Programs and Services:	
Name	
<ul> <li>✓ 110</li> <li>✓ 25</li> <li>✓ 80</li> <li>✓ AAMail Server</li> <li>File and Printer Sharing</li> <li>✓ Remote Assistance</li> <li>□ Remote Desktop</li> <li>✓ Sogou Pinyin Service</li> <li>□ UPnP Framework</li> </ul>	
Add Program       Add Port       Edit       Delete         Image: Display a notification when Windows Firewall blocks a program       What are the risks of allowing exceptions?	
OK Cancel	

Figure 1-4

### 2. Windows 2008 Firewall

- 1) Open Windows Control Panel -> Windows Firewall.
- 2) In the pop up "Windows Firewall" dialog box, click "Allow a program or feature through Windows Firewall" (Figure 1-5).



Figure 1-5

3) In the pop up "Allowed Programs" dialog box, click the "Allow another program..." button (Figure 1-6).

Allowed Programs		
🚱 🕞 🖉 🔹 All Control Panel Items 👻 Windows Firewall 🔹 Allowed Programs	▼ Search Control Panel	2
Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall     To add, change, or remove allowed programs and ports, dick Change settings.     What are the risks of allowing a program to communicate?     Allowed programs and features:     Name     BranchCache - Content Retrieval (Uses HTTP)	Search Control Panel      Generatings      Home/Work (Private)      Public	
□       BranchCache - Hosted Cache Client (Uses HTTPS)         □       BranchCache - Hosted Cache Server (Uses HTTPS)         □       BranchCache - Peer Discovery (Uses WSD)         □       COM + Network Access         □       COM + Network Access         □       COM + Remote Administration         ♥       Core Networking         ♥       DFS Management         □       Distributed Transaction Coordinator         □       File and Printer Sharing         □       ISCSI Service         □       Key Management Service         □       Netboock Discovery		
	Allow another program OK Cancel	

Figure 1-6

4) In the pop up "Add a Program" dialog box, select "AAMail Server", and click the "Add" button to finish configuring Windows 2008 R2 Firewall (Figure 1-7).

Add a Program	×
Select the program you want to add, or click Browse to find o listed, and then click OK.	ne that is not
Programs:	
() AAMail Server	
Internet Explorer	
Internet Explorer (64-bit)	
🔂 Uninstall AAMail Server	
Path: C:\AAMail\aamailserver.exe	Browse
C. Withdingdanhalber ver texe	browsen
What are the risks of unblocking a program?	
You can choose which network location types to add this prog	ram to.
Network location types Add	Cancel

Figure 1-7

After operated according to the above steps, AAMail can send and receive mails through firewall normally. Please note that because the <u>OS</u> may be different, the place to configure firewall maybe also different, and so are the steps. Please configure according to the actual situation to make sure that AAMail will not be refused by firewall.

## 3.2 Enable AAMail in Router

If your server is connected after the router/NAT, then you need to set Port Forwarding (also named Port Mapping) for Port 25/110/80 from router to server. If your server isn't connected after router, or you only need to create <u>"LAN Mail Server"</u>, then you do not need to operate like the following steps.

Normally, the local IP of router is 192.168.1.1. Suppose your server's local IP is 192.168.1.101.

Login to the router's (NAT) control panel, usually, it is http://192.168.1.1.

- 1) Find the function of "Port Forwarding" (If the provider is different, then the control panel interface may be different as well. Here we take "LINKSYS" for example).
- 2) Create a port forwarding rule for port 25/110/80, then enable it and save the modification (Figure 1-1).

(h) Linksys*	Filters	Forwarding	Dynamic Routing	<u>Static</u> Routing	DMZ <u>MAC Addr.</u> Host Clone	Setup
PORT RANGE FORWARDING	Port forw When us will be re	varding can ers from the directed to	be used to se Internet makes the specified	t up public ce certain r IP.	services on your ne requests on your rou	atwork. Iter, they
Customized Applications		Ext.Port	Protocol TCP	Protocol UDP	IP Address	Enable
	80	<b>To</b> 80	- -		<b>192.168.1.</b> 100	N
	0	<b>To</b> 0			<b>192.168.1</b> . 0	
	0	то 0			192.168.1. 0	
	0	То 0			192.168.1. 0	
	0	то 0			192.168.1. 0	
	0	ТоО			192.168.1.	
	0	то 0			192.168.1. 0	
	0	ТоО			192.168.1. 0	
	0	ТоО			192.168.1. 0	
	0	тоО			192.168.1.0	
	UPnP	Forwarding	Port Trigg	ering		
	Apply	Cancel	J			

Figure 1-1

After operated according to the above steps, you can send and receive mails from the extranet normally. Please note that because the provider of router may be different, so the place to configure port forwarding maybe also different, but the steps are the same. Please configure according to the actual situation to make sure that port 25/110/80 are opened in the Internet.

## **4** Domain Name and Account

If you created the "LAN Mail Server", then you can create the domain name as you wish (such as 567.com, 789.com); If you created the "Internet Mail Server", the domain name must have been registered on the Internet and set MX record, then you can send and receive mails normally.

AAMail supports multiple domain names, and every domain name can run with different mode (such as Standard Mail Server Mode, Map Mail Server Mode and Share Mail Server Mode).

It is very easy and convenient to create AAMail account, and only 3 steps can finish creating its account.

## 4.1 Create and Manage Domain Name

After running AAMail program, on the menu bar, click "Settings -> Domain settings", or on the toolbar, click the "Domain" button, then you can create, delete and modify the domains very conveniently. AAMail supports multiple domain names, and every domain name can run with different model, such as Standard Mail Server Mode, Map Mail Server Mode and Share Mail Server Mode.

### Detailed Introduction about Creating Domain Name

There are four steps to create domain name, please see the detailed introduction below.

1) Basic settings of domain name (Figure 1-1). In the "Domain name" edit box, type the domain name, and then click the "Next" button.

Create domain ste	p 1/4		<b>×</b>
Basic settings			
	Domain name	test.com	Disabled
	Main domain		- Alias
Click for help	Domain type	Standard mai	l server mode 🔹 🔻
Default	mailbox size	1024	(M)
Doma	in max volume	0	(M) 📃 Limited volume
Ac	count maximum	0	🔲 Limited number
		Back	Next Cancel

Figure 1-1

**Disabled:** Select this check box to disable this domain name; uncheck then this domain name can be used.

Alias: Please refer to "What Is Domain Alias".

Domain name: Type a domain name as you wish.

**Main domain:** If you have several same domain names, you can select the "Alias" check box, and then click the "Main domain" combo box, and select a main domain.

**Domain type:** Select the mail server mode. It could be any of standard, map or share mail server mode. For details, please refer to the articles of "<u>Standard Mail Server Mode</u>", "<u>Map Mail Server Mode</u>" and "<u>Share Mail Server Mode</u>".

Default mailbox size: Set the mailbox size of the domain account.

Limited volume: Select this check box, then you can set the "Domain max volume".

Domain max volume: The max volume for the domain to store mails.

**Limited number:** Select this check box, then you can set the "Account maximum". **Account maximum:** The maximum quantity of domain account.

2) Mail settings (Figure 1-2).

Create domain step 2/4	<b>—</b>
Mail settings          Image: Mail settings<	s from Internet. o Internet. stent local recipients.
Max mail size when sending to Internet Max recipients when sending via Outlook	1024 1024
Catch all account	•
Back	Next Cancel

Figure 1-2

Allow receive incoming mails from Internet: Whether to allow receive incoming mails from Internet.

Allow send outgoing mails to Internet: Whether to allow send outgoing mails to Internet.

**Send to Internet for nonexistent local recipient:** This is only valid under Map Mail Server Mode. For details, please refer to "Branches Create Internal Mail Server".

**Max mail size when sending to Internet:** Allowed max mail size when sending mails to Internet (including attachments).

Max recipients when sending via Outlook: Allowed max recipients when sending mails

via Outlook.

**Catch all account:** One domain name can define one catch account for receiving nonlocal recipients' mails (for example, if you send a mail to yang@yaozhi.com, but this account does not exist in yaozhi.com domain, normally, the mail server will auto bounce this mail. But if you have set the "Catch all account", then it will receive mails from nonlocal existent account. And you can set the local existent account as "Catch all account").

3) Webmail settings (Figure 1-3).

Create domain step 3/4	×
Webmail settings	
In able register new accounts via Webmail.	
New registered accounts need authorization.	
Click for help Illow add members to Public address book.	
Single attachment max size 1024 (M)	
Total attachments max size 1024 (M)	
Back Next Cancel	

Figure 1-3

**Enable register new accounts via Webmail:** Whether to enable register new accounts via Webmail.

**New registered accounts need authorization:** Select to require admin auth before using the new registered account; uncheck then you can use the new registered account as soon as finished its registration.

Allow add members to Public address book: Whether to display all the mail addresses of the domain accounts on Webmail address book.

**Single attachment max size:** Allowed max size of single attachment when using Webmail to send mails.

**Total attachments max size:** Allowed max size of all accounts' attachments when using Webmail to send mails.

4) Create accounts (Figure 1-4).

Create domain step 3/4	<b>-</b> ×-
Create accounts These accounts will have same initial passwords. These accounts will have same initial passwords. Auto create group: everyone@test.com Auto create account: admin@test.com Auto create account: postmaster@test.com Password for above accounts Please input password again	
Back	Cancel

Figure 1-4

AAMail will help you auto create two frequently-used admin accounts and a group of "everyone@test.com". Up to this point, the processes of creating AAMail domain name are finished.

## 4.2 Domain MX Record

#### 1. MX Record

If the <u>mail server</u> you have created is only used in LAN, or you have chosen map mail server mode, then you can create the domain name as you wish, and you don't need the real Internet <u>mail domain name</u> or modify the domain MX. And you can't modify the MX, because the real Internet domain name does not belong to you.

If your domain name has been registered in the Internet, then the domain MX record should be modified on "Domain Control Panel" (If you don't know how to do it, please contact the domain provider), and there is no need to do any settings on AAMail.

#### 2. What Is MX Record

MX (Mail Exchanger) Record is a mail exchange record. When you send mails via email system, it can locate the mail server according to the recipients' email address suffix. For example, when a user sends a mail to "<u>user@mydomain.com</u>" through Internet, and its email system checks "mydomain.com" domain MX record through DNS, if the MX record exists, the mail will be sent to the mail server which is specified by MX record.

Take "hotmail.com" for example, if it has four mail servers, and their MX addresses are mx1.hotmail.com, mx2.hotmail.com and so on. A domain name can be set multiple MX records, and each MX record is related to a mail server. And the multiple MX records are ordered by setting priority. MX record is also a modification of DNS, and this change will usually take a few minutes to 48 hours for refreshing the entire Internets' DNS caches.

For creating the Internet mail server, your domain name must be the real Internet domain name, and then you need to configure the domain MX record to your server. Internet Mail Server means that accounts on this server will be able to receive mails from the Internet directly. For example, if "sina.com" sends you a mail, it will connect to your server directly, and send the mail to AAMail through SMTP interaction. And the domain MX record is to let "sina.com" find your server <u>IP address</u>'s DNS records.

#### 3. Set the Mail's Domain MX Record

If the ISP providers are different, the control panels will be different either. If you don't know how to set the mail's domain MX record, you can ask your ISP provider for help, or tell us your domain login account and password, and we will help you to configure it. Suppose your domain name is "yaozhi.com", and your server IP is "210.23.109.2". Please see the below introduction about the steps of modifying domain <u>MX record</u>.

- 1) Login the domain management panel.
- 2) Create an "A" record, and specify the value of external IP (such as 210.23.109.2).
- 3) Create a "MX" record, and specify the value as the record "A" which you just created (such as "mail.yaozhi.com").
- 4) Both of your company's SMTP server IP and POP3 server IP will be as "mail.yaozhi.com".

After created the domain name and account, configured the <u>firewall/router</u> (NAT) and domain MX record, the whole setting processes are completed. And you can test sending and receiving mails now. Right now, we recommend you clicking "Tool ->Diagnose wizard" to diagnose the running status of your server. If you encountered any problems during this process, please send the diagnose report to us, which will be helpful for us to solve these problems.

#### 4. Diagnose the MX Record Settings

After setting the domain MX record, about 8 hours later, you can diagnose whether the MX record has been correctly set or not. There are two methods to diagnose it.

#### A. Use the Online Diagnose Tool

Input "http://www.aamailsoft.com/mx.php" in the browser's address bar, then type the mail server's domain name into "Your Domain Name" edit box, and click the "Detect" button to execute the diagnosis. Take "aypower.net" for example, you can see the domain MX record (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

#### B. Run the "nslookup" Command

Enter the Windows command window, and type "nslookup -qt=mx 'domain'", then you can execute the diagnosis.

Suppose the result of nslookup -qt=mx 263.net is as below, you can find that the domain MX of 263.net is mx.263.net. Then, you can type telnet mx.263.net 25 to check whether the server is running normally (Figure 1-2).



## 4.3 Create Mail Account

#### 1. Create Mail Account

After running AAMail program, on the toolbar, click the "Account" button, or on the menu bar, click "Account -> New account", and then it will pop up "Account creation wizard" dialog box. With only three simple steps, you can finish creating an account. If your domain name is the "<u>Map Mail Server Mode</u>", it has an additional "Map settings" setup step. Please see the specific steps below.

#### 2. Step 1 Basic information

Type the Account, Password and User name into their corresponding edit boxes, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-1).

Account creation w	izard	
Basic information	on 1/3	
G	Account	yaozhi 🙋 test.com 👻
Click for help	Password	•••••
Disabled	User name	yaozhi
	Mailbox size	1024 📝 Limited (M)
	Account alias	
	Account type	Normal account
	Manager	
		Back Next Cancel

Figure 1-1

Account: Type an account as you wish. And you can click the "@" combo box to select a domain.

**Password:** Set the password of this account.

User name: Set the user name of this account.

Limited (M): Select this check box, and then you can set the "Mailbox size".

Mailbox size: Set the mailbox size of the account.

Account alias: The second name of the account.

**Account type:** Includes Normal account, Domain administrator, Server administrator, Special local staff account and Special manager account.

Manager: Select the check account.

**Normal account:** Normal user's account. **Domain administrator:** Supports managing the local domain accounts on Webmail, including create and delete accounts etc.

**Server administrator:** Supports managing all the domain names and accounts on Webmail, including create and manage domain names etc.

**Special local staff account:** Only displayed on "Share mail server mode". The sending mails' accounts will be replaced by the manager account.

**Special manager account:** Only displayed on "Share mail server mode". It supports auto transferring the received mails to the internal employees.

#### 3. Step 2 Map settings

If you chose the "Map mail server mode", it has an additional "Map settings" setup step. Other mail server modes don't have this step when creating account (Figure 1-2).

Account creation wiz	zard			<b>-</b> X-
-Map settings 2/4				
G	Email	support@yaozhi.com	🔽 Enabled	
Click for help	POP3 server	mail.yaozhi.com	Port 110 📃 SSL	
	SMTP server	mail.yaozhi.com	Port 25 📃 SSL	
-	POP3 account	support@yaozhi.co	Password	
0%	SMTP account	upport@yaozhi.com	Password D00000	
Detect		📝 My server need auth	nentication when sending	g
Reset	Copy option	Always leave copies		
		Back	Next Car	ncel

Figure 1-2

You can set an external mailbox for this account, and it will send mails via this external email address (rather than the created AAMail account).

After setting the external mailbox parameters, you can click the "Detect" button to see whether the parameters have been correctly set or not. If it is OK, you can click the "Next" button to continue the settings.

#### 4. Step 3 Permission

In the "Permission" dialog box, you can restrict the incoming and outgoing mails of the account (Figure 1-3).

Account creation wizard	×
Permission 3/4         Image: Click for help         Receive from Internet         Refer to domain         Click for help         Send to Internet         Refer to domain         Image: Click for help         Send to Internet         Refer to domain         Image: Click for help         Image: Click for help	
▼ Allow change password ▼ Allow modify mapping settings	
Max recipients when sending via Outlook 0 VRefer to domain	
Back Next Cancel	

Figure 1-3

**Receive from Internet:** Restrict receiving mails from the Internet.

Send to Internet: Restrict sending mails to Internet.

**Forbid:** No matter how you set the domain parameter, this account will be forbidden to receive mails from Internet or send mails to Internet. And you can set the white list by clicking the "Exception" button.

**Refer to domain:** Using the parameter control of domain level to determine the account's permission of sending and receiving mails. If the domain parameter permits, then it will allow receiving and sending mails from and to Internet. Otherwise, it will forbid. **Allow:** No matter how you set the domain parameter, this account will be allowed to receive mails from Internet or send mails to Internet. And you can set the black list by clicking the **"Exception"** button.

**Forbid:** No matter how you set the domain parameter, this account will be forbidden to receive mails from Internet or send mails to Internet. And you can set the white list by clicking the "**Exception**" button.

Allow login Webmail: Whether to allow login Webmail.

Allow modify POP3 remote settings: Whether to allow modify POP3 remote settings on Webmail.

Allow change password: Whether to allow change password on Webmail.

**Allow modify mapping settings:** Whether to allow modify mapping settings on Webmail.

**Max mail size when sending to Internet:** Allowed max mail size when using client software to send emails to Internet. You can select the "Refer to domain" check box, or uncheck it to set the value as you wish.

**Max recipients when sending via Outlook:** Allowed max recipients when sending emails via Outlook. You can select the "Refer to domain" check box, or uncheck it to set the value as you wish.

#### 5. Step 4 Information

You can set company and personal information here (Figure 1-4).

Account creation wiz	ard		×
Information 4/4 O Click for help	Company Department Telephone		
Mobile		Fax	
Contact email			
Contact address			
Description			÷
		Back OK	Cancel

Figure 1-4

Compared with other information, the "Department" is more important, because it can be used to search the account. And it is not necessary to input all of the above information, because it is just for your reference.

## **4.4 Account Properties**

#### **1. Account Properties**

After created the account, you can double click one account in AAMail main interface to check and modify the account properties. In the "More rules" tab, you can modify the account's "Auto forward rules", "Auto reply settings", "Mail filter rules" and "Signature settings" etc. (You can also modify these information on Webmail as you wish.)

#### 2. General

Includes "Account", "Password" (You can modify the password here), "User name", "Mailbox size", "Account alias", "Account type", "Manager" and "Disabled" (Figure 1-1).

Account	
General Permission POP3 rem	ote More rules Monitor Information
Acc	ount yaozhi 🔘 test.com 👻
Click for help Pass	word
000029 Vser	name yaozhi
🔲 Disabled Mailbox	size 1024 📝 Limited (M)
Account a	lias
Account	type Normal account 💌
Mar	ager 🗸
	OK Cancel

Figure 1-1

#### 3. Permission

You can modify the account sending and receiving permission, and some related parameters. For details, please refer to "<u>Step 3 Permission</u>" (Figure 1-2).

Account
General Permission POP3 remote More rules Monitor Information
Receive from Internet Refer to domain - Exception Click for help Send to Internet Refer to domain - Exception
<ul> <li>✓ Allow login Webmail</li> <li>✓ Allow modify POP3 remote settings</li> <li>✓ Allow change password</li> <li>✓ Allow modify mapping settings</li> </ul>
Max mail size when sending to Internet 0 🛛 🗹 Refer to domain Max recipients when sending via Outlook 0 📝 Refer to domain
OK Cancel

Figure 1-2

#### 4. POP3 remote

You can set one or more POP3 remote mail account to receive the remote mails on AAMail mail server. For details, please refer to "Remote Receiving Mails". You can enable an external email account in the "Map settings", and all the emails sent by the
local accounts will be sent to Internet in the name of this external email account (Figure 1-3).

ccount						
General Permission	POP3 remote More	rules	Monitor	Informati	on	
Ø	Map to remote	suppor	rt@yaozhi.	.com	•	•
Click for help	Email	Valid	P	OP3	SMTP	
<b></b>	support@yao	Yes	mail.ya	ozhi. c	mail.yaozhi.c	
<u>Moalty</u>						
I ∐e⊥ete						
	-					
				C	OK Cano	cel

Figure 1-3

#### 5. More rules

You can set and modify the account's "Auto forward rules", "Auto reply settings", "Mail filter rules" and "Signature settings" etc (Figure 1-4).

Account
General Permission POP3 remote More rules Monitor Information
Auto forward rules         Auto reply settings           Click for help         Mail filter rules         Signature settings
Show in Public address book. Auto transfer unnamed manager mails to all its staff. All outgoing mails need to be checked before send out.
Uncheckuped mails will be auto sent out after 48 (hours)
Checkup manager
OK Cancel

Figure 1-4

Show in Public address book: Whether to allow the account email address show in

Public address book on Webmail.

Auto transfer unnamed manager mails to all its staff: Whether to auto transfer mails to all staff when the manager account received unnamed mails (Only "Special manager account" has this function).

All outgoing mails need to be checked before send out: Set a time for auto sending the unchecked mails after that time (Only "Special local staff account" has this function).

#### 6. Monitor

You can set an account as supervisor, and then specify which account or accounts will be monitored when sending or receiving mails by click the "Outgoing list" and "Incoming list" to configure (Figure 1-5). For details, please refer to "Mail Monitor".



Figure 1-5

#### 7. Information

You can set company and personal information here (Figure 1-6).

count		-
General Permission	POP3 remote More rules Monitor Information	
Click for help	Company Department Telephone	
Mobile	Fax	
Contact email		
Contact address		
Description		
	OK Ca	ncel

Figure 1-6

According to the above steps, you can check, modify and set all accounts' properties.

### 4.5 What Is Domain Alias

If you have had several same domain names like "yyy.com", "yyy.net" and "yyy.cn" etc., then you can set "yyy.com" as the main domain name, set "yyy.net" and "yyy.cn" as the domain aliases. Therefore, you only need to manage "xxx@yyy.com", and then the incoming mails of "xxx@yyy.net" and "xxx@yyy.cn" will be auto sent to "xxx@yyy.com".

It is very easy to use the domain alias function of AAMail. But please note that if you want the domain alias accounts to receive mails from the Internet as well, you need to add domain alias MX records, otherwise, the domain aliases are only valid in the LAN.

# **5 Mail Client**

### 5.1 Foxmail Mail Client

In this article, we will introduce how to configure Foxmail mail client to send and receive mails on AAMail. And the method of setting other version Foxmail mail auditing is completely similar. In order to avoid mail server being used badly by some spammers, AAMail requires SMTP authentication. So, please remember to select the "Outgoing Server neess AUTHENTICATION" on Foxmail early version, otherwise, although you can receive mails on Foxmail, you are not be able to send mails.

Suppose your account is "aaa@test.com", mail server address is "mail.test.com".

- 1) After running Foxmail, click "Tools -> Account Manager".
- 2) In the pop up "Create New Account" dialog box, click the "Mailbox Type" combo box, and select "POP3", type the account (such as aaa@test.com) into the "Account Description" dialog box, and password into the "Password" edit box, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-1).

Create I	New Account		×
Acco	ount	ox type (aaa@test.com),you need to set mailbox	infomation by y
	<u>M</u> ailbox Type:	POP3	
	<u>P</u> assword:	******  Remember Password	
	Account Description:	aaa@test.com	
ł	Help	< Back Next >	Cancel

Figure 1-1

3) In the pop up "Server Config" dialog box, type the account (such as aaa@test.com) into the "Account" dialog box. Click the "Server Type" combo box, and select "POP3". Type the receive server and SMTP server address (such as mail.test.com)

into their corresponding edit boxes. Select the "Outgoing Server needs AUTHENTICATION" check box, and keep other values as default settings. And then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-2).

Cr	eate New Account		×
-	5erver Config		
	<u>A</u> ccount:	aaa@test.com	
	Server Type:	POP3	
	<u>R</u> eceive Server:	mail.test.com	
	<u>P</u> ort:	110 Use SSL for security on this server	
	<u>S</u> MTP Server:	mail.test.com	
	P <u>o</u> rt:	25       □ Use SSL for security on this server         □ Use STARTTLS if server supports         ☑ Outgoing Server needs AUTHENTICATION	
[	Help	< Back Next > Cancel	

Figure 1-2

4) In the pop up "Finish" dialog box, click the "Test" button to see whether the input parameters have been correctly set or not. After pass the test, click the "Finish" button to complete creating the account of Foxmail mail client (Figure 1-3).

Create New Account	<u>.</u>	×
Finish Congratulation, Creating account has completed. Account:aaa@test.com Incoming Server server:pop.test.com type:POP3 port:110 Outgoing Server server:smtp.test.com port:25	Test Modify Server	
Help < Back	Create Another Account	

Figure 1-3

About the Outlook Express settings, please refer to "<u>Outlook Express Mail Client</u>". About the Office Outlook settings, please refer to "<u>Office Outlook Mail Client</u>".

## 5.2 Outlook Express Mail Client

In this article, we will introduce how to configure Outlook Express mail client to send and receive mails on AAMail.

Suppose your AAMail account is aaa@123.com, server IP is 192.168.1.1.

The specific steps are as follows.

- 1) After running Outlook Express, click the "Tools Accounts...".
- In the pop up "Internet Accounts" dialog box, select the "Mail" tab, and then click "Add - Mail..." (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

3) In the pop up "Your Name" dialog box, type the display name (such as yaozhi) into its edit box, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-2).

nternet Connection Wizard
Your Name
When you send e-mail, your name will appear in the From field of the outgoing message. Type your name as you would like it to appear.
Display name: yaozhi For example: John Smith
< Back. Next > Cancel

Figure 1-2

4) In the pop up "Internet E-mail Address" dialog box, type the AAMail account (such as aaa@123.com) into the "E-mail address" edit box, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-3).

Internet Connection Wizard		×
Internet E-mail Address		×
Your e-mail address is the	address other people use to send e-mail messages to you.	
E-mail address:	aaa@123.com For example: someone@microsoft.com	
	( Back Nevt ) Ca	ancel

Figure 1-3

5) In the pop up "E-mail Server Name" dialog box, select "POP3" server, type AAMail mail server's LAN IP address (such as 192.168.1.1) into "Incoming mail (POP3, IMAP or HTTP) server" and "Outgoing mail (SMTP) server" edit boxes, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-4).

Internet Connection Wizard	×
E-mail Server Names	×
My incoming mail server is a POP3 server.	
Incoming mail (POP3, IMAP or HTTP) server:	
192.168.1.1	
An SMTP server is the server that is used for your outgoing e-mail. Outgoing mail (SMTP) server: 192.168.1.1	
< Back Next >	Cancel

Figure 1-4

6) In the pop up "Internet Connection Wizard - Internet Mail Logon" dialog box, type the account name and password (such as aaa@123.com, 123456) into their corresponding edit boxes. Please note that AAMail supports multiple domain names, so the account name should include the full name of domain name suffix, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-5).

Internet Cor	nnection Wizard		×
Internet	Mail Logon		×
Туре	the account name and	I password your Internet service provider has given you.	
Acco	unt name:	aaa@123.com	
Passv	vord:	J	
		Remember password	
lf your l (SPA) to Autheni	nternet service provide o access your mail acc tication (SPA)' check b	r requires you to use Secure Password Authentication ount, select the 'Log On Using Secure Password ox.	
🗖 Log	on using Secure Pass	word Authentication (SPA)	
		< Back Next > Ca	ancel

Figure 1-5

- 7) After clicking the "Finish" button, it will come back to the "Internet Accounts" dialog box.
- 8) In the "Internet Accounts" dialog box, double click the account that you just added (such as 192.168.1.1) (Figure 1-6).

Inte	ernet Account	s				? ×
4	All Mail	News	Directory Serv	ice		 <u>A</u> dd
	Account	Т	уре		Connection	Remove
-	😤 192.168.1.1	n	nail (default)		Any Available	 Properties
						Set as Default
						Import
						Export
						Set Order
						Close

Figure 1-6

 In the pop up "192.168.1.1 Properties" dialog box, select the "Servers" tab, and then select "My server requires authentication" check box, at last, click the "OK" button (Figure 1-7).

😤 192.168.1.1 Properties	<u>?</u> ×				
General Servers Connection Security Advanced					
Server Information	_				
My incoming mail server is a POP3 server.					
Incoming mail (POP3): 192.168.1.1					
Outgoing mail (SMTP): 192.168.1.1					
Incoming Mail Server	_				
Account name: aaa@123.com					
Password:					
Remember password					
Log on using Secure Password Authentication					
Outgoing Mail Server	-				
My server requires authentication Settings					
OK Cancel App	oly				

Figure 1-7

Up to this point, you can send and receive mails from Outlook Express now.

**Note:** In order to avoid mail server being used badly by some spammers, AAMail requires SMTP authentication. If you do not select the "My server requires authentication" check box, Outlook Express can only receive mails but not send mails.

About the Foxmail settings, please refer to "Foxmail Mail Client". About the Office Outlook settings, please refer to "Office Outlook Mail Client".

# 5.3 Office Outlook Mail Client

We will take Office Outlook 2007 for example to introduce how to configure Office Outlook mail client to send and receive mails on AAMail mail server. Suppose your AAMail account is yaozhi@test.com, server IP is 192.168.1.1. The specific steps are as follows. 1) Run Office Outlook, and click "Tools - Account Settings..." (Figure 1-1).

😡 Outlook Today - Microsofi	t Ou	tlook				_		x
<u> </u>	<u>T</u> oo	ls <u>A</u> ctions <u>H</u> elp			Т	Type a question for hel	р	-
🗄 🔂 <u>N</u> ew 👻 🌧 🛛 🐼		S <u>e</u> nd/Receive		Back 🚱 🖄 🖄 🚮 🖏				++ =
Mail		Instant Search		look Today				٦
Favorite Folders	11	Address <u>B</u> ook Ctrl+Shift+B						
🔄 Inbox		Mailbo <u>x</u> Cleanup	Ì	dy 15, 2012	Custo	eries Outlask Tadau	1	
Sent Items	0	Empty "Deleted Items" Folder		ny 15, 2015	Custo	mize Outlook Today	l	
Mail Folders		Eorms •	·	Tasks		Messages		
All Mail Items		Macro •	٠I			Inbox (	1	
Personal Folders Deleted Items		Account Settings	٦			Drafts (	)	
Drafts		Tru <u>s</u> t Center	1			Outbox 0	)	
ind Inbox		<u>C</u> ustomize						
Outbox		Options						
	T							
Mail								
Calendar	1							
Contacts								
2 🖬 🖉	Ŧ							<b>-</b>

Figure 1-1

2) In the pop up "Add New E-mail Account" dialog box, select the "Internet E-mail" radio button, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-2).

Add New E-mail Account	×
Choose E-mail Service	ž
Internet E-mail Connect to your POP, IMAP, or HTTP server to send and receive e-mail messages.	
C Microsoft Exchange Connect to Microsoft Exchange for access to your e-mail, calendar, contacts, faxes and voice mail.	
Other     Connect to a server type shown below.     Outlook Mobile Service (Text Messaging)	
< Back Next > Car	ncel

#### Figure 1-2

3) In the "User Information" and "Logon Information" column, type the AAMail account and password, In the "Server Information" column, type AAMail server's LAN IP address into the "Incoming mail server" and "Outgoing mail server (SMTP)" edit boxes, and then click the "More Settings..." button (Figure 1-3).

ŀ	Add New E-mail Account		×
	Internet E-mail Settings Each of these settings ar	e required to get your e-mail acco	unt working.
	User Information		Test Account Settings
	Your Name:	yaozhi	After filling out the information on this screen, we
	E-mail Address:	yaozhi.test.com	recommend you test your account by clicking the button below. (Requires network connection)
	Server Information		Le comune de la co
	Account Type:	POP3	Test Account Settings
	Incoming mail server:	mail.test.com	
	Outgoing mail server (SMTP):	mail.test.com	
	Logon Information		
	User Name:	yaozhi.test.com	
	Password:	****	
		Remember password	
	Require logon using Secure	Password Authentication (SPA)	More Settings
			< Back Next > Cancel

Figure 1-3

4) In the pop up "Internet E-mail Settings" dialog box, click the "Outgoing Server" tab, and select the "My outgoing server (SMTP) requires authentication" check box, and then select the "Use same settings as my incoming mail server" radio button. At last, click the "OK" button (Figure 1-4).

Internet E-mail Settings	X
General Outgoing Server Connection Advanced	
General       Outgoing Server       Connection       Advanced         ✓       My outgoing server (SMTP) requires authentication         ✓       Use same settings as my incoming mail server         ✓       Log on using         User Name:	)) 
OK	Cancel

Figure 1-4

5) In the "Add New E-mail Account" dialog box, click the "Test Account Settings..." button to see whether the test parameters have been correctly set or not. After finishing the test, click the "Close" button, and then click the "Next" button to finish all the settings of Office Outlook (Figure 1-5).

	Add New E-mail Accou	int	x
	Internet E-mail Se Each of these se	t <b>tings</b> ttings are required to get your e-mail ac	count working.
Test Account Settings			
Congratulations! All tests c	ompleted successfully. Clic	k Close to continue. Stop	Test Account Settings After filling out the information on this screen, we recommend you test your account by clicking the button below. (Requires ensured: consortion)
Tasks Errors		2 Status	Test Account Settings
✓ Log onto incoming m ✓ Send test e-mail mes	ail server (POP3) sage	Completed Completed	
	Password:	Remember password	
	🔲 Require logon usin	g Secure Password Authentication (SPA)	) More Settings
			< Back Next > Cancel

#### Figure 1-5

Up to this point, the all processes of setting the account of Office Outlook are finished.

About the Foxmail settings, please refer to "<u>Foxmail Mail Client</u>". About the Outlook Express settings, please refer to "<u>Outlook Express Mail Client</u>".

# 6 Main Features

## 6.1 Mail Group

#### 1. Mail Group

AAMail's mail group is very powerful and easy to use. You can put all the accounts into one mail group, or select which accounts belong to which group as you wish. All the members in the group will receive the mails which are sent to the group. Moreover, AAMail supports creating multiple mail groups.

#### 2. Mail Group Features

AAMail supports setting the permission about sending and receiving mails of the group members, such as "Allowe Internet incoming mails" and "Allow all local incoming mails" etc.

We've made an elaborate design for AAMail's group mails. All the accounts in the group can see the mails which are sent to the group with only one copy of these mails, rather than multiple copies of mail entity to each group member. The processing efficiency of group mails is very high, and you have nothing to worry about even if you send an email with more than 20M to a mail group with 1000 accounts.

AAMail supports the group to be a member of another group. When an email is sent to a group, not only the accounts in this group can receive it, but also the group's subgroups and subgroups' all accounts will receive the mail. If an account belongs to multiple mail groups, then this account will only receive one mail instead of multiple mails.

#### 3. Create Mail Group

1) In the AAMail main interface, on the toolbar, click the "Group" button (Figure 1-1).

🅑 AAMail Server 5.0.20130817	7 (Trial version will expire	after 45 days	5)				
Operation Account Tool Settin	igs <u>H</u> elp						
🛛 🚨 Account 🔄 Group 🕥 Do	omain 🕴 💮 Service 🛛 💥 S	Settings 🛛 📥 I	Purchase 🔀	Shutdown			
Account Status	Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	
🕀 💽 test.com	🗇 everyone@test.com	everyone		Group	(4)		
	🖾 sales@test.com	sales		Group	(0)		
	🚨 a@test.com	а		Account	1/1	0.1M	
	🚨 admin@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	
	🚨 postmaster@test.com	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	
							-
							_
							-
							-
							-
							-
	•	I		I			
	17. \u&u20001041_4	-1				4	
[14:23:17]-[System] Ver=5.0.201308 [14:23:18]-[System] Services: SendM [14:23:17]-[System] LAN=192.168.71	17, Win2003(64) - Access, Wi fail(20), POP3Remote(5), Adm 1.112	eicome! iin=8025, POP3:	=110, SMTP1=2	25, SMTP2=0			
							_
System (SMTP ) POP3	$\lambda$ Remote $\lambda$ Outgoing $\lambda$ Inc.	oming/					
Ready Total=5 4=sa	ales@test.com					201	13-1

Figure 1--1

In the pop up "Group" dialog box, type the group account, password and group name into their corresponding edit boxes, and then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-2).

Group	×
General Member	
Group account Click for help Group name Exception Exception	Finance       Itest.com         Finance       Itest.com         Finance       Itest.com         All accounts as members       Allow Internet incoming mails.         Allow all local incoming mails.       Disabled
	<u> </u>

Figure 1-2

All accounts as members: Whether to enable all accounts as members of this group. Allow Internet incoming mails: Whether to allow receiving Internet incoming mails. Next time you open this dialog box, you can click the "Exception" button to set a black list.

Allow all local incoming mails: Whether to allow the accounts of the domain to send mails to the group. Next time you open this dialog box, you can click the "Exception" button to set a black list.

Disabled: Select to disable this group; uncheck then this group will be available.

3) Double click the group you just created. In the pop up "Group" dialog box, click the "Member" tab. Then, you can add and delete members for this group. (Figure 1-3).

Group				×
General Member				
Members av	vailable (5)		Members	selected (0)
Account	User name		Account	User name
🗐 sales@test.com	sales			
everyone@test.com	everyone	==>		
🊨 a@test.com	а			
🚨 postmaster@test	Postmaster	All =>		
🚨 admin@test.com	Administrator			
		<==		
		- 01		
		<= All	•	
•				
<u></u>			1	
				OK Cancel

Figure 1-3

**Members available:** Select one or multiple accounts, and click the "==>" button, then this/these account(s) will go to the "Members selected" column, that is, to be the member(s) of this group. Click the "**All =>**" button, then all accounts will be the members of this group.

**Members selected:** Selected members of this group. You can click the "<==" button or "<= All" button to remove this/these account(s) from this group.

Button "+": Manually create accounts for this group.

Up to this point, the processes of creating mail group are finished.

# 6.2 ISP Relaying Function

In order to use the mail system to send mails overseas, we developed the ISP relaying function on AAMail mail server, thus ensuring send and receive overseas mails normally and making the work stable.

#### 1. Relaying Server

<u>Mail relaying</u> is a send mode which is relative to direct sending. Take sending a mail to "test@sina.com" for example, direct sending refers to AAMail connects to sina.com server directly, and after the SMTP interaction with sina.com, then sending the mail to sina.com. While relaying means sending a mail through an intermediate mail server. For

example, suppose you set a relaying account of "relay@163.com", AAMail will send the mail to 163.com server, and then the 163.com server will send this mail to sina.com.

#### 2. ISP Relaying Function

Many domestic IP ranges were listed on overseas anti-spam RBL, thus your mails will be rejected overseas, at this time, the relaying function becomes very useful.

AAMail provides a powerful relaying function, it supports creating multiple relaying accounts of system-level and account-level, and the multiple relaying accounts can send mails in turns automatically. Some mail servers, such as yahoo, will limit the number of the sending mails each day, so we recommend you setting 2 to 5 relaying accounts, and select "System auto-try by turns".

#### 3. Set the Relaying Account

It is recommended to choose the "Enterprise Mail Account", such as 263.net etc., for relaying accounts. For free accounts, we recommend Gmail and 163.com, but please note that 163.com and yahoo will not provide SMTP/POP3 by default. It is recommended to set 2 to 3 relaying accounts.

We will take Gmail for example, suppose that your Gmail account is "yaozhi@gmail.com", type "smtp.gmail.com" into the Server address edit box, "yaozhi@gmail.com" into the Email address edit box, and select the "SSL" check box, then type the Login account of yaozhi@gmail.com and Login password into their corresponding edit box.

- 1) In the AAMail main interface, on the menu bar, click "Settings -> ISP server settings".
- 2) In the pop up "ISP server list" dialog box, click the "Add" button (Figure 1-1).

ISP server list						×
Click for help	Priority System auto	o-try by turns	:	- Add		OK Cancel
Email address		Priority	Enabled	Server address	Port	
L						

Figure 1-1

3) In the pop up to "ISP account settings" dialog box, after setting the parameters of relaying account, click the "Detect" button to test whether the parameters have been correctly set or not, and then click the "OK" button to complete the settings of relaying account (Figure 1-2).

I	SP account settings		<b>—</b> ×
	Server address	smtp Inabled	0
	Email address	support@youngzsoft.net	•
	SMTP port	465 📝 SSL	Detect
	ESMTP	My server need authentication	100%
	Login account	support@youngzsoft.net	
	Login password	•••••	ОК
	Priority	0	Cancel

Figure 1-2

**Note:** If you use 163, QQ, 126 as the relaying accounts, please do not select the "SSL" check box.

- After setting the relaying account successfully, on the menu bar, click the "Tool -> Diagnose sending".
- 5) In the pop up "AAMail diagnose" dialog box, select the newly added relaying account, and click the "Diagnose" button to test whether the mail is sent successfully or not (Figure 1-3).

Jiagnose sending	Sender	admin		@	test. c	om		•
Click for help	Target	support@aamails	oft.com				Diagno	se
	Method	ISP relay send:	support@you	ingzso	ft. net	smtp		•
								Þ

Figure 1-3

6) If it prompts "Sent OK to support@aamailserver.com via smtp.gmail.com" in the sending process, then it proves that the relaying account has been set successfully.

You can set 2 to 3 relaying accounts according to the above method to improve the sending rate maximally.

#### 4. Relaying FAQs

#### 1) When to Enable Relaying

Relaying will be enabled only when AAMail failed to send mails (rejected by the recipients). For example, send an email to overseas, and if the mail is rejected by the anti-spam blacklist, then AAMail will enable the relaying account. Because the relaying server is a large mail service provider, normally, the mail will not be rejected. If you set multiple relaying accounts, the system will use the account according to the priority, to avoid the account being used too frequently and then being disabled.

 What Email Address Will the Recipients See When They Received the Relaying Mails

Under normal circumstances, the recipients will see your email address when they received your relaying mails, instead of the relaying accounts' address. It will be an exception if you use Gmail as a relaying account, because Gmail will modify the sender address to the relaying account address in the midcourse. You can choose a relaying server which will not modify the mail content, such as 163.com/263.net etc.

 What Email Address Will the Recipients Reply to When They Replied the Relaying Mails If the recipients use Outlook/Foxmail mail client to receive mails, the mails they sent will back to your email address rather than the relaying account address when they replied directly. If the recipients use Webmail to receive mails, then the relaying server will not modify the sender's address, and the mails sent by the recipients will reply directly to your email address. As AAMail can auto specify the reply address of your emails for the relaying sending mails, there is only one case that the mails will reply to your relaying account address, that is, the relaying account you used will modify the sender, such a Gmail or others, and the recipients' Webmail does not support specifying the reply email address.

 What Email Address Will the Bounce Been Sent to When the Relaying Mails Are Sent Failed

If your mails are sent to relaying server, normally, this process will not fail. But during the process of sending from the relaying server to the recipients then, will possibly fail. And this bounce will often be sent to the relaying account address. Normally, we recommend that the mail administrator set a special account with the "remote receiving mails" function to receive the bounce of relaying mails, or the administrator login the relaying mailbox regularly to check the bounces.

### 6.3 Remote Receiving Mails

#### 1. Remote Receiving Mails

If you have multiple different mail accounts of mail server, you need to open a lot of pages to see different mail accounts every time, which is inconvenient and not good for management. AAMail's "Remote Receiving Mails" function can solve this problem easily. You can simultaneously receive a number of different accounts' emails via AAMail's remote receiving mails function, and it can put these mails together into AAMail server.

#### 2. Set Remote Receiving Mails

1) Double click one account in AAMail account list, in the pop up "Account" dialog box, select the "POP3 remote" tab, and click the "Add" button (Figure 1-1).

Account				<b>×</b>
General Permission	POP3 remote More	rules M	onitor Informat	ion
Ø	Map to remote			▼
Click for help	Email	Valid	POP3	SMTP
💠 Add				
🥜 Modify				
🗊 Delete				
			C	OK Cancel

Figure 1-1

2) In the pop up "Remote POP3 account" dialog box, input the related information. Click the "Copy option" combo box, and select "Always leave copies". And then click the "Detect" button to test whether the account has been correctly set or not. At last, click the "OK" button (Figure 1-2).

Remote POP3 ac	count				×
Email	744600969@qq.com				Ø
POP3 server	pop.qq.com	Port	110	SSL	Detect
SMTP server	smtp.qq.com	Port tication when	25 sendin	a SSL	100%
POP3 account	744600969@qq.com	Password	••••		ОК
SMTP account	744600969@qq.com	Password	••••	•••••	Cancel
Copy option	Always leave copies	•	30	days	

Figure 1-2

You need to input the POP3 server and SMTP server address according to the actual server address, "pop.qq.com" and "smtp.qq.com" are the addresses just for your reference.

#### 3. POP3 Retrieve

1) In the AAMail account list, right click the remote receiving account that you just added, and click the "POP3 retrieve" (Figure 1-3).



Figure 1-3

2) In the pop up "Pop3 retrieve" dialog box, click the "POP3 email" combo box, and select the POP3 account. Then, click the "Start" button to receive the mails of "744600969@qq.com" immediately (Figure 1-4).

Pop3 retri	ieve			<b>_</b>	٢.
6	Account	admin@test.com 👻	Start	Close	
•	POP3 email	744600969@qq.com (pop.qq.com)	(Once retrieve = 10 mails)		
		<ul> <li>Only retrieve NEW mails from the server.</li> <li>Leave copies on the server.</li> </ul>			
					6.
					٣

Figure 1-4

AAMail supports setting multiple accounts of remote receiving, and it can put these accounts together into one account, which is very convenient for you to check and manage multiple mailboxes' emails.

### 6.4 Diagnose Function

#### 1. AAMail Diagnose Function

The Internet mail communication environment is very complex. You may encounter many problems then. As AAMail owns very useful and a variety of detect and diagnose functions, it will help you to target the problems quickly. After you installed AAMail mail server, on the menu bar, please click "Tools -> Diagnose wizard" to conduct a complete diagnosis. If you failed to send mails, please use the diagnose function to detect the problem, and then forward the diagnose report to us, which will be helpful for us to solve this problem.

#### 2. Diagnose Wizard

On the menu bar, click "Tools -> Diagnose wizard", then you can enable the diagnose wizard function, which is a combination of diagnosing the server information, MX, sending and RBL. And finally it will form a complete diagnose report. We will begin to introduce each of the diagnose function below.

#### 3. Step 1 Server Information

It will diagnose AAMail's version, database, windows, account, domains, IP Internet, IP Intranet, and Webmail (Figure 1-1).

AAMail diagnose	3
Server information Followings will start a serial of tests sfor your server: diagnose MX, diagnose sending and RBLs lookup. If meet problems, please feedback result report to us for technical support.	
If your server has installed firewall software, check to open TCP port 25 (SMTP), 110 (POP3) and 80 (Webmail). If your server is hehind a router, check to set port forwarding 25, 110 and 80 from router to server. Version: [ AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 ] Database: [ Microsoft Access ] Windows: [ Windows 7 Service Pack 1 [64bit] ] Account: [ 7 ] Domains: [ youngrsoft.com; test.com ] IP Internet: [ 175.080.181 ] IP Intranet: [ 192.168.101.1; 192.168.107.1 ] Webmail: [ http://127.0.0.1/mail ] Download: [ http://www.aamailsoft.com/download.htm ]	
Back Next Cancel	]

Figure 1-1

### 4. Step 2 Diagnose MX

To diagnose whether the MX record has been successfully set or not (Figure 1-2).

AAMail diagnose		<b>x</b>
Diagnose MX Click for help O%	Here can help you check MX of your domain is correct or not. If MX settings is not correct, you cannot receive Internet incoming Domain youngrsoft.com	*
٠	Back Diagnose Cance.	-

Figure 1-2

#### 5. Step 3 Diagnose Sending

Supports diagnosing the sending mails (Figure 1-3). If you find some mails failed to send to the target recipients, then you can track the sending processes via this function, and it will record the SMTP sending processes' details, which is convenient to locate the problems.

AAMail diagnose						×
Diagnose sending			_			
G	Sender	admin	0	test.com	▼	
Click for help	Target	support@aamailsoft.com			Diagnose	
	Method	Direct send: admin@test.c	om		•	
[15:13:29] RECV: 550 [15:13:29] SEND: QUI [15:13:29] SEND: QUI [15:13:29] SEND: CON [15:13:36] RECV: 220 [15:13:36] RECV: 220 [15:13:40] RECV: 250 [15:13:40] SEND: MAI [15:13:42] RECV: 250 [15:13:42] RECV: 250 [15:13:43] RECV: 250 [15:13:43] SEND: RCP [15:13:44] RECV: 354 [15:13:44] RECV: 354 [15:13:44] SEND:	) 5.7.1 RFC T JL> NMECT alt2.a ) mx.google. ) mx.google. ) test.com ) mx.google. I.FROM: <ad ) 2.1.0 OK e T TO: <supp ) 2.1.5 OK e CA Go ahead )942 byte \\n.\r\n&gt;</supp </ad 	2822 specifications for mo aspmx.l.google.com (74.125. com ESMTP e68si40978yha.24 com at your service min@test.com> e68si40978yha.241 - gsmtp e68si40978yha.241 - gsmtp e68si40978yha.241 - gsmtp e68si40978yha.241 - gsmtp	ore inf 140.27 1 - gs	formation. ) mtp	q1si11338324ige.5	
•						
			Back	Dia	gnose Cance	1

Figure 1-3

#### 6. Step 4 Diagnose RBLs

**RBL** is an important anti-spam method, the IP addresses which send the spams will be listed to the RBL, and if these IP addresses send mails again, then the mails (whether they are spams or not) will be rejected.

The diagnose RBL function supports detecting the local IP addresses or the specified IP addresses, and to see whether they are listed to the RBL or not (Figure 1-4).

AAMail diagnose		×
Diagnose RBLs	Lookup if an IP address has been listed in RBLs. IP address 175.0.80.181 0%	
Followings are some their RBLs (Realtime your mails as junk of 01. zen. spamhaus. or; 02. sbl. spamhaus. or; 03. cbl. anti-spam. or 04. cdl. anti-spam. or 05. cblplus. anti-sp 06. cblless. anti-sp 07. dnsbl-1. uceproto 08. dnsbl-2. uceproto 09. dnsbl-3. uceproto 10. dnsbl.njabl. org 11. bl. spamcop. net 12. bl. csma. biz 13. dun. dnsrbl. net 14. dnsbl. sorbs. net 15. no-more-funn. more	e famous anti-spam organizations. If your server IP has been listed in e blackhole lists), some mail servers will reject your mails, or deem directly. g g rg_cn rg_cn ram.org_cn amm.org_cn ect.net ect.net ect.net ect.net	
	Back Diagnose Can	cel

Figure 1-4

#### 7. Diagnose Report

The diagnose report shows all the detection data, so you can see the current status of the server very clearly (Figure 1-5).

AAMail diagnose		×
Diagnose report Fo Click for help	ollowings are diagnose summary report for your mail server. ou could feedback this report for technical support.	
Version: [ AA Database: [ Mi Windows: [ Wi Account: [ 7 Domains: [ 7 IP Internet: [ 17 IP Internet: [ 17 Webmail: [ ht Download: [ ht	Mail Server 5.0.20130501 ] icrosoft Access ] indows 7 Service Pack 1 [64bit] ] ] pungzsoft.com; test.com ] 55.0.80.181 ] 92.168.1.105; 192.168.101.1; 192.168.107.1 ] itp://127.0.0.1/mail ] itp://www.aamailsoft.com/download.htm ]	* III
Domain: youngzsoft.c My SMTP: 220 AAMail MX: mx2.sub5.homie.m SMTP response: 22 Result: Failed! MX: mx1.sub5.homie.m SMTP response: 22	com SMTP ver 5.0.20130501 Win7[64]-Access 7/5 UN=(). nail.dreamhost.com (208.113.200.128) 20 homiemail-mx23.g.dreamhost.com ESMTP nail.dreamhost.com (208.113.200.127) 20 homiemail-mx21.g.dreamhost.com ESMTP	Ŧ
· L	Back Feedback Finish	

Figure 1-5

Click the "Finish" button to complete the whole diagnose processes.

### 6.5 Anti-spam Function

#### 1. Anti-spam

Spam is a tough nut to the world. Till now, there are no particularly effective anti-spam methods. AAMail is improving its anti-spam technology. For example, we once adopted SpamAssassin and the world famous Linux's open source anti-spam technology, but it turned out that SpamAssassin is not so good for diagnosing Chinese spams. We also adopted the Domain MX lookup technology, but due to the complex network environment, there were a lot of misjudgments. Now, AAMail is using the International Anti-spam Organization Blacklist RBL diagnose techniques. So far, we found that this is the most direct and more effective anti-spam method.

#### 2. Anti-spam Solution

If your <u>IP address was listed to blacklist</u>, you can use the new function of AAMail. AAMail's latest version combined the diagnose methods of domain MX lookkup, email address and IP address's black list and white list lookup, and international RBL anti-spam organization black list lookup etc. It also provides two methods to deal with the spams, such as "add [SPAM] tag on Webmail subject" and "reject the mail directly in SMTP". You can add the auto filter rules for spams, and then the spams will be filtered to an unknown

mailbox. And the mails in that mailbox will be auto cleared after storing several days.

#### 3. Anti-spam Settings

If the incoming mail's IP address is in the black list, this mail will be rejected directly. If the incoming mail's email address is in the address black list, this mail will be rejected directly.

If the incoming mail's domain <u>MX record</u> does not exist, this mail will be rejected directly.

On the menu bar, click the "Settings -> Anti-spam settings", it will pop up the "Anti-spam settings" dialog box.

#### 1) General

If the incoming mail's IP is in a RBL anti-spam black list, you can click the "Action" combo box, and select "Reject this mail directly in SMTP" or "Add [SPAM] tag on Webmail subject". Enable or disable anti-spam function, IP address white list, IP address black list, domain/email white list and domain/email black list (Figure 1-1).

Anti-spam settings	x
General RBL list IP block list Address block list	_
<ul> <li>Enable anti-spam function.</li> <li>Click for help</li> <li>Enable address white list.</li> <li>Enable IP address black list.</li> <li>Enable domain/email white list.</li> <li>Enable domain/email black list.</li> </ul>	
OK Cancel	

Figure 1-1

There are two methods to deal with spams via AAMail anti-spam function.

Add [SPAM] tag on Webmail subject: The mail server will not reject the spams directly, but it will put these mails into the Spam instead.

Reject this mail directly in SMTP: The mail server will reject the spams directly, and it will send the bounce to the senders.

#### 2) RBL list

You can add, modify, delete, enable or disable the RBL here (Figure 1-2).

General RBL list	IP bl	ock list Address block list		
Ø		RBL	Valid	
Click for help	01	zen. spamhaus. org	YES	=
· · · · · · · · ·	02	sbl. spamhaus. org	YES	
🕂 Add	03	cbl. anti-spam. org. cn	YES	
	04	cdl. anti-spam. org. cn	YES	
🥖 <u>M</u> odi fy	05	cblplus, anti-spam, org. cn	YES	
🗑 Delete	06	cblless. anti-spam. org. cn	YES	
m Perece	07	dnsbl-1. uceprotect. net	YES	*

Figure 1-2

#### 3) IP block list

IP block list (Figure 1-3)

If you often received mails from one IP address, you can add this IP address into the black list, and then the server will reject the mails from this IP.

General RBL list	IP block list Address	block	e list	
Click for help	White list √e.g.> 123.123.123.123;	-	Black list √e.g.> 11.22.33.44;	-
	123.*.123.*;		123.33.*.*;	
		Ŧ		-

Figure 1-3

#### 4) Address block list

Address block list (Figure 1-4)

If you often received mails from one email address, you can add this email address into the black list, and then the server will reject the mails from this email address.

Ar	nti-spam settings				<b>×</b>
	General RBL list	IP block list Addres	s block	list	
	Click for help	White list <pre><e.g.> white.com; xxx@aaa.com yyy@aaa.com;</e.g.></pre>	*	Black lis <pre></pre>	t
			Ŧ		~
				ОК	Cancel

Figure 1-4

#### 4. Anti-spam FAQs

#### 1) If the Mail Was Misjudged to Be the Spam, What Should I Do?

If you find that the mail was misjudged to be the spam, you can add the sender's server IP to "IP white list", or add its domain name to "address white list".

# 2) If My Server IP Was Listed in RBL Anti-spam Black List, How to Remove My Server IP from RBL?

Sometimes, your server IP may be listed to one RBL international anti-spam organization black list. If the server IP was listed in RBL black list, the other server may reject your emails.

AAMail has RBL black list diagnose function, on the menu bar, click the "Tool -> Diagnose RBL", and it will diagnose whether your server IP was listed to anti-spam organization black list or not. If yes, please visit the link in feedback information. For example, if your server IP was listed to zen.spamhaus.org black list organization, you need to visit http: //www.spamhaus.org and apply to remove your IP from RBL list. As long as you fill in the application form according to the requirement of RBL organization, normally, your IP will be removed from the RBL list 1 to 2 days later. For details, please refer to "Solution for IP Address Being Listed in RBL".

#### 3) As An Administrator, How to Set the Anti-spam Rules?

We recommend that you diagnose your server IP first, and to see whether it was listed to international anti-spam organization black list. On the menu bar, click the "Tool -> Diagnose RBL". If your IP was listed to it, please apply to remove your IP from the RBL list. Otherwise, some mail servers will reject your mails. If the spams are filtered to an unknown mailbox or spam, then these mails will not be received by Outlook, and Outlook will only receive the mails in inbox.

On the menu bar, click the "Settings -> Anti-spam settings", you can enable anti-spam

function, and select the relevant action.

#### 4) As A Normal Account, How to Set the Anti-spam Rules?

When <u>create account</u>, AAMail will auto help you create the default anti-spam rules, and you can add or modify the anti-spam rules via the "mail filter" function on Webmail.

#### 5. Strengthen the Password Management

If the password of your AAMail account was too simple, it will be cracked by others very easily. Then, plenty of spams will be sent to you, and simply, your server was attacked. Because you need to send and receive mails from other mailboxes in the Internet, the port 25 of the mail server system needs to be opened to the entire Internet, Which provides opportunities for some spammers to use their tools to scan and crack the email passwords by brute force, thus obtaining the sending permission, and sending a lot of spams via your mail server. Then, in AAMail "Mail sending" list (click the "Status" on the left side of AAMail main interface), you will see hundreds of mails are constantly sending out, which will certainly cause the server congestion, and others can not receive and send mails normally.

The solution is to strengthen the management of the password length, and the steps are as follows.

- 1) In AAMail main interface, on the toolbar, click the "Settings" button.
- 2) In the pop up "Server settings" dialog box, click the "Account" tab, and type a number into the "Minimum password length" edit box (such as "8", it indicates that the minimum password length of all the accounts must be 8) (Figure 1-5).

Server settings		<b>×</b>
General Account Mail	Network Webmail Logs	Advanced
	Minimun password length	8
	Unlimited mailbox volume	2048 (M)
Click for help Ke	ep mails in Trash mailbox	30 days
K	eep Mails in Spam mailbox	30 days
POP3 remote next POP3 remote mag	check interval 5 mi retrieve once 10	nutes
		OK Cancel

Figure 1-5

Operate according to the above steps and methods, you can manage the spams on mail server very easily then. Meanwhile, the security of your mail server can be assured.

## 6.6 Mail Monitor Function

#### 1. Mail Monitor

AAMail supports setting multiple supervisors. A supervisor can monitor all same domain accounts, or several specified accounts. You can also choose only monitor one account's incoming mails or outgoing mails. If an account is monitored when send and receive mails, the supervisor will receive the copies of these mails then.

AAMail is a mail system which supports mail monitor. It made some special designs for mail monitor. If a mail is monitored by multiple supervisors at the same time, the monitored mail will only store one copy of the mail entity. So you don't need to worry about that if you set 1000 supervisors to monitor one account at the same time will run out of the system resources. No matter how many supervisors are monitoring a mail, there is only one monitoring copy in the system, which is shared by all supervisors.

#### 2. How to Set Mail Monitor

In AAMail, the relationship among a supervisor and the monitored accounts is called "Monitoring Relationship". Create accounts first, and then you can specify which account to be the supervisor, finally, set the monitored accounts for the supervisor. The steps are as follows.

- 1) Double click the account which you would like it to be the supervisor.
- 2) In the pop up "Account" dialog box, click the "Monitor" tab, and select the "Is supervisor" check box to enable monitoring account (Figure 1-1).

Account
General Permission POP3 remote More rules Monitor Information
Image: Click for help       Image: Supervisor         Image: Click for help       Image: Monitor all same domain accounts         Image: Click for help       Image: Monitor all same domain accounts         Image: Click for help       Image: Monitor all same domain accounts         Image: Click for help       Image: Monitor all same domain accounts
Outgoing list         Monitor all outgoing mails           Incoming list         Monitor all incoming mails
OK Cancel

Figure 1-1

**Monitor all same domain accounts:** Select to monitor all same domain accounts, otherwise, you need to select the monitored accounts one by one.

**Also monitor local exchanged mails:** Select to only monitor local to Internet mails; uncheck to monitor both of local to local, and local to Internet mails.

#### How to Monitor the Specified Accounts

Click the "Outgoing list" button. In the pop up dialog box, you can specify the accounts which need to be monitored when send mails (Figure 1-2).

Outgoing list					
Supervisor	admin@test.com	ОК	Cancel		
Accounts available(3)			Accounts selected(0)		
Account  Account  Account  Account  Account  Account  Account	User name everyone Postmaster yaozhi	==> All => <==	Account	User name	
•	•		•	+	

Figure 1-2

Click the "Incoming list" button. In the pop up dialog box, you can specify the accounts which need to be monitored when receive mails (Figure 1-3).
Incoming list				×
Supervis	or admin@test.com		ОК	Cancel
Accounts ava	ilable(3)		Accounts :	selected(0)
Account	User name		Account	User name
everyone@test.com	everyone			
🊨 postmaster@test	Postmaster			
♣ yaozhi@test.com	yaozhi			
		All =>		
		<==		
		<= All		
			•	4
	•			+

Figure 1-3

#### 3. How to Check the Monitored Mails

The supervisor can use Outlook or Foxmail to receive the mails in "Monitor folders" (mails of other "Monitor folders" will not be received). Or you can use Webmail to login the supervisor account, click "Monitor folders", and then you can check, archive and search the monitored mails (Figure 1-4). For details, please refer to "Monitor Folders".

eive			
e	Yourfolder indox has 0 message(	(s)/0 unread(s)	
	Select All X Delete 🔯 Drop forever 🔛 Mark as read	Solution Archive	
	Status Account Sender recipients Direction	Subject Date Size	
	(No mails)		
	🥅 Select All 🗙 Delete 🛛 Drop forever 🔛 Mark as unread	Move to Archive	
	🖬 First 🕜 Previous 🕞 Next 🖬 Last (	→ Jump / 0 Go	

#### Figure 1-4

AAMail also supports monitor <u>mail group</u>. When monitor the mail group, a mail which is sent to this group will be monitored only once. When the group members received this mail, it will not be monitored again. If the supervisor received this mail, it will not be monitored.

### 6.7 Anti-virus Function

AAMail does not have anti-virus function itself, because most of the current anti-virus softwares have already integrated powerful mail virus monitoring and clearing functions. These professional anti-virus softwares can provide anti-virus functions.

AAMail mail server can work with most of the current anti-virus softwares very well. We recommend that you use the AVG, Kaspersky and Rav etc.

It will not bring any viruses when install AAMail mail server, because the original mails are stored on AAMail mail server with txt format, and after decoding, the mail attachments are the dat files which are added two blank lines in the head of the files to break the original contents.

AVG download link: www.grisoft.com

Kaspersky download link: http://xiazai.zol.com.cn/detail/16/156876.shtml Rav download link: http://www.rising.com.cn/2012/v16/

### 6.8 Server Settings

#### 1. Server Settings

In AAMail main interface, on the toolbar, click the "Settings" button, or on the menu bar, click the "Settings -> Server settings", then it will pop up the "Server settings" dialog box, and you can set the parameters here.

#### 2. General

Server settings	
General Account Ma	il Network Webmail Logs Advanced
Click for help	✓ Autorun when Windows startup ■ Auto minimized after autorun ■ Auto lock after minimized
Service name	AAMailServer
Language	English 🔹
	UK Cancel

Figure 1-1

**Autorun when Windows startup:** Whether to auto run AAMail when Windows startup. For details, please refer to "<u>Autorun AAMail When Windows Startup</u>".

**Auto minimized after autorun:** Whether to auto minimize AAMail to the notification area after auto running.

Auto lock after minimized: Whether to auto lock AAMail after minimized to the notification area.

#### 3. Account

Server settings
General Account Mail Network Webmail Logs Advanced
Minimun password length 0 Unlimited mailbox volume 2048 (M) Keep mails in Trash mailbox 30 days Keep Mails in Spam mailbox 30 days
POP3 remote next check interval 5 minutes POP3 remote max retrieve once 10
OK Cancel

Figure 1-2

**Minimum password length:** Allowed minimum password length. For details, please refer to "<u>Strengthen the Password Management</u>".

**Unlimited mailbox volume:** The maximum volume of the mailbox when the mailbox size is unlimited.

**Keep mails in Trash mailbox:** The minimum days for keeping mails in trash mailbox. **Keep mails in Spam mailbox:** The minimum days for keeping mails in spam mailbox.

**POP3 remote next check interval:** The interval for the same POP3 remote account to receive mails.

**POP3 remote max retrieve once:** The max number for the same POP3 remote account to receive mails at one time.

#### 4. Mail

Server settings	×
General Account Mail Network Webmail Logs Advanced	
Image: Click for helpTries after failed3Next try intervals10minutes	
Max SMTP message size 512 (M) Max SMTP recipients number 1024	
Max SMTP sending one day 500	
OK Cancel	

Figure 1-3

**Tries after failed:** Times to send the mails again after sending them failed.

Next try interval: How long to send the mails again after sending them failed.

**Max SMTP message size:** Allowed max mail size when the Internet sends mail to AAMail server.

**Max SMTP recipients number:** Allowed max recipients when the Internet sends mail to AAMail server at the same time.

#### 5. Network

Server settings	×
General Account Mail Network Webmail Logs Advanced	
SMTP port       25       2nd SMTP port       0         Click for help       POP3 port       110       Admin port       8025         SMTP HELO       %Domain%         SMTP local exchange need authentication.         SMTP allow empty       MAILFROM command (<>).         Lock IP 1 minutes after password fail 5 times.	
OK Cancel	

Figure 1-4

**SMTP HELO:** Normally set the domain name. When there are multiple domain names on the server, you can specify the needed HELO command manually. For details, please refer to the "HELO Command" below.

**SMTP local exchange need authentication:** Even the local account send mails to local account, it requires typing the account name and password first.

**SMTP allow empty MAILFROM command (<>):** If you selected this check box, it will reject many spams, but it can't send some return receipts either.

#### **HELO Command**

During the process of SMTP interaction, AAMail server will send a command "HELO test.com".

The above command is the HELO Command, and the "test.com" is called "Hello String". If it prompts the error message like "Helo command rejected: Invalid name" on your server, then on the toolbar of AAMail, please click the "Settings -> Network" to check the Hello String, and the default value is "%Domain%".

If you need to upgrade AAMail from the old version to AAMail 5.0, then, you need to confirm whether the Hello String parameter is "%Domain%". The steps are as follows.

- 1) In the main interface of AAMail, click the "Settings -> Network".
- In the pop up "Server settings" dialog box, click the "Network" tab, then change the parameter in "SMTP HELO" edit box to "%Domain%", and click the "OK" button (Figure 1-5)

Server settings							×
General Accour	t Mail	Network	Webmail	Logs	Advanced		
Click for he	1p	SMTP port POP3 port	25 110	2nd	l SMTP port Admin port	0 8025	
SMI	p helo 🕅	)omain%					
🔽 S	TP local	exchange 1	need auth	enticati	on.		
🔽 S	MTP allow	empty MAII	FROM com	nand (🔿	).		
🔽 L	ock IP 1 m	inutes aft	ter passw	ord fail	5 times.		
					OK	Ca	ncel

Figure 1-5

#### 6. Advanced

Server settings
General Account Mail Network Webmail Logs Advanced
Send mail thread number 20 FOP3 remote thread number 5 Allow save SMTP messages to Sent folder Network timeout after 60 Seconds
OK Cancel

Figure 1-6

**Send mail thread number:** The max thread number when send mails. Normally, 10 to 20 is enough. If the mail volume is very big, you can adjust the number appropriately, normally, it should not exceed 50. After you modified the settings, please restart the server.

**POP3 remoter thread number:** The max thread number when receive POP3 remote mails. Normally, 5 to 20 threads are OK. After you modified the settings, please restart the server.

Allow save SMTP messages to Sent folder: Whether to allow save SMTP messages to

Sent folder.

**Network timeout after:** The longest network timeout when send and receive mails. And AAMail will be automatically disconnected after timeout.

You can set AAMail system parameters in the server settings. For example, you can set AAMail startup mode, choose language, limit the mailbox size, password length, days for keeping mails in trash or spam mailbox, tries times after sending mails failed and next try intervals, max SMTP message size, SMTP/POP3 port and HELO command, which will be a great help for us to manage AAMail mail server.

### 6.9 Database Settings

#### 1. Database Settings

AAMail mail server is based on database. On the menu bar, click the "Settings -> Database settings", and then you will see the current database settings here.

#### 2. Access Database

If you have chosen the Microsoft Access Database, then, on the menu bar, click the "Settings -> Database settings", you will see the Access databases settings here. Because the Access database has many volume limitation problems, we have done some special processings on AAMail. For example, Access database has created individual mail database for every account.

Access database will become unstable if it runs for a long time. Normally, we recommend that you compact the database once a week to ensure that the Access database is running stably. On the menu bar, click the "Tool -> Compact database" (Figure 1-1).

ccess da	tabases			×
Ø	Every account has its own n Compact every week at leas	nail database. st is recommended.	Close	
No	Account	Location		
2.	<main></main>	D:\AAMail\data\mail\accessIdap.mdb		
<b>a</b> 23	postmaster@youngz	D:\AAMail\data\mail\acs000023.mdb		
<b>a</b> 24	admin@youngzsoft.c	D:\AAMail\data\mail\acs000024.mdb		≡
<b>a</b> 25	everyone@youngzs	D:\AAMail\data\mail\acs000025.mdb		
<b>a</b> 26	everyone@test.com	D:\AAMail\data\mail\acs000026.mdb		
<b>a</b> 27	admin@test.com	D:\AAMail\data\mail\acs000027.mdb		
<b>2</b> 28	postmaster@test.com	D:\AAMail\data\mail\acs000028.mdb		-

Figure 1-1

#### 3. SQL Server Database

If your database is SQL Server Database, then, on the menu bar, click the "Settings -> Database settings", you will see the connection parameters of SQL Server database. You can modify the SQL Server connection parameters here. After the modification, please restart AAMail mail server (Figure 1-2).

Database settings		×
Configu Don't fo	re database connection parameters here. rget to click Detect button to test the connection.	
Data source	(local) 🗸	
SQL Server service	MSSQLSERVER	
Database name	sqlmail D:\AAMail\data\mail\sqlmail.mdf	
Authentication	User + Password authentication	
User ID	sa Detect	
Password	•••••	
	OK Cancel	
	Figure 1-2	

1) Data Source: Data source corresponds to the "(local)" in database, and please choose the data source according to your actual situation (Figure 1-3).



Figure 1-3

 SQL Server service: In the "Services" window, double click "SQL Server (MSSQLSERVER)" (Figure 1-4).



Figure 1-4

In the pop up "SQL Server (MSSQLSERVER) Properties" dialog box, you can check the Service name here (Figure 1-5).

SQL Server (MSSQ	LSERVER) Properties (WIN2008R2CN)	×
General Log On	Recovery Dependencies	_
Service name:	MSSQLSERVER	
Display name:	SQL Server (MSSQLSERVER)	
Description:	Provides storage, processing and controlled access of data, and rapid transaction processing.	
Path to executab "C:\Program Files	le: \Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10.MSSQLSERVER\MSS(	
Startup type:	Automatic	
Help me configur	e service startup options.	
Service status:	Started	
Start	Stop Pause Resume	
You can specify t from here.	he start parameters that apply when you start the service	
Start parameters:		
	OK Cancel Apply	

Figure 1-5

- 3) Database Name: The database name of AAMail 5.0 is "sqlmail", and AAMail 4.26 has two database names, they are, "SQLLdapInfo" and "SQLLdapInfo".
- 4) Authentication: It corresponds to the authentication of SQL Server account.
- 5) Login Account: The account used to login SQL Server.
- 6) Login password: The password used to login SQL Server.

AAMail mail server supports Access and SQL Server databases (No requirement for SQL Server version). For details about how to choose Access and SQL Server database, please refer to "<u>AAMail Database</u>".

### 6.10 Admin Password

The admin password is mainly used for locking AAMail main interface.

The steps are as follows.

- 1) On the toolbar, click the "Settings" button.
- 2) In the pop up "Server settings" dialog box, select the "Auto lock after minimized"

check box (Figure 1-1).

Server settings
General Account Mail Network Webmail Logs Advanced
Image: Click for help       Image: Autorum when Windows startup         Image: Click for help       Image: Auto minimized after autorum         Image: Click for help       Image: Auto lock after minimized
Service name AAMailServer
Language English 🔻
OK Cancel
OK Cancel

Figure 1-1

- 3) After minimized, open the AAMail main interface again, it will require admin password (The password is empty by default).
- 4) On the menu bar, click "Settings -> Admin password", you can reset the admin password here (Figure 1-2).

AAMail Server 5.0.2013050	D1 (T	rial version will expire	afte	r 0 day	;)					
Operation Account Tool	Set	tings Help		_						
🚨 Account 🖾 Group 🤇	0	Domain settings	F4	ttings	💧 🏝 Purcha	ase 🔀 Shutd	lown			
Account Status	×	Server settings Database settings	F6	ame	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume
🕀 🕥 youngzsoft.com	箴	Anti-spam settings		brie trator		Domain admin	0/0	0.0M	0.0%	[•1]
		ISP server settings		aster hi		Account	0/0	0.0M	0.0%	[-1] 1024M
	26	Admin password								
		Welcome mail								
				_						
	_									
	_									
	•									•
[09:13:32]-[System] Ver=5.0.201305 [09:37:39]-[System] Services: NOT i [09:13:32]-[System] LAN=192.168.1	01, V nstall .105,	/in7[64] - Access, Welcom ed, Stopped! 192.168.101.1, 192.168.1(	e! 07.1							*
										-
System (SMTP) POP3	λBe	emote $\lambda$ Outgoing $\lambda$ Incom	ning/							
Ready Total=4 27	/=ad	lmin@test.com						2013-(	07-19 0	9:37:40

Figure 1-2

It is very safe and reliable with this password management method in the mail server. You only need to minimize AAMail main interface, then it will be locked, and it will require password to login then.

If you forgot your admin password, please refer to "<u>What If I Forgot the Admin Password</u>" for information.

### 6.11 Welcome Mail

For every newly added account, AAMail will send a welcome mail to this account by default.

The welcome mail content can be customized as you wish, and the specific steps are as follows.

1) On the menu bar, click "Settings -> Welcome mail" (Figure 1-1).

AAMail Server 5.0.2013050	)1 (Т	rial version will expire	aftei	r 0 day	s)					
Operation Account Tool	Set	tings Help		_						
🚨 Account 🗇 Group 🤇	0	Domain settings	F4	ttings	💧 🏝 Purcha	ase 🔀 Shutd	lown			
Account Status	×	Server settings Database settings	F6	ame one	Department	Type Group	Inbox/All (3)	Used	Ratio	Volume [-1]
		ISP server settings		aster - hi		Account Account	0/0	0.0M 0.0M 0.0M	0.0%	[-1] 1024M
		Admin password Welcome mail								
				_						· · · · · · · · · ·-
	•			III						•
[09:13:32]{System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome! [03:42:38]{System] Services: NOT installed, Stopped! [09:13:32]{System] LAN=192.168.1.105, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1										
System (SMTP) POP3	λRe	emote λ Outgoing λ Incom	ing /							~
Ready Total=4 27	'=ad	lmin@test.com	-7					2013-0	07-19 0	9:42:39

Figure 1-1

2) You can modify the content of "Compose welcome mail" here (Figure 1-2).

Compose welcome mail	×
Image: Auto send welcome mail to new users     OK       Subject     Welcome to AAMail Server!     Cancel	
Dear %UserName%, Welcome to AAMail Server! You could visit http://www.aamailsoft.com for latest information. AAm@ilsoft.com support@aamailsoft.com	*
	Ŧ

Figure 1-2

The administrator can customize the welcome mail content here, and decide whether to enable "Auto send welcome mail to new users".

Note: Please do not delete "Dear %UserName%," when you modify the welcome mail content.

## 7 Standard Mail Server

### 7.1 Create Standard Mail Server

There are three mail server modes on AAMail, including Standard Mail Server, <u>Map Mail</u> <u>Server</u> and <u>Share Mail Server</u>.

The above three mail server modes are distinguished by "Domain type". One AAMail mail server can create multiple domain names, and it supports different domains running with different server modes.

It is very easy to create standard mail server, and the methods are as follows.

#### Method 1

When create domain name, click the "Domain type" combo box, and select the "Standard mail server mode" (Figure 1-1).

С	reate domain ste	ep 1/4			
	Basic settings				
		Domain name	test.com		Disabled
		Main domain			- 🗖 Alias
	Ulick for help	Domain type	Standard ma	il ser	rver mode 🔹 🔻
	Default	mailbox size	1024	(M)	
	Doma	in max volume	0	(M)	🔲 Limited volume
	Ac	count maximum	0		Limited number
			Back	:	Next Cancel

Figure 1-1

#### Method 2

1) In the account list, double click the "mail domain" (such as "test.com" mail domain) (Figure 1-2).

🥑 AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)											
Operation Account Tool Settings Help											
🚨 Account 💿 Group 🌖	Domain 🛛 🎡 Service	🔀 Settings	👌 Purcha	ase 🔀 Shutd	lown						
Account Status	Comain C	Settings User name everyone Administrator Postmaster yaozhi	Department	ase X Shutd Type Group Domain admin Account Account	lown Inbox/All (3) 0/0 0/0 0/0	Used 0.0M 0.0M 0.0M	Ratio 0.0% 0.0% 0.0%	Volume [-1] [-1] [-1] 1024M			
[09:45:03]-[System] Services: NOT installed, Stopped] [09:13:32]-[System] LAN=192.168.1.105, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1											
$\langle$ System $\langle$ SMTP $\rangle$ POP3 $\rangle$ Remote $\rangle$ Outgoing $\rangle$ Incoming /											
Ready Total=4 27	admin@test.com=					2013-0	07-19 0	9:45:03			

Figure 1-2

2) It will pop up the "Domain settings" dialog box, in the "Domain type" combo box, select the "Standard mail server mode", then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-3).

Domain settings	
Basic settings Mail settings W	ebmail settings Filter rules
Domain name Dick for help	test.com Disabled
Domain type	Standard mail server mode 🔹 💌
Default mailbox size	1024 (M)
Domain max volume	0 (M) 🗌 Limited volume
Account maximum	0 Dimited number
	OK Cancel

Figure 1-3

The application types of standard mail server are "<u>Create LAN Mail Server</u>", "<u>Create Internet Mail Server</u>" and "<u>Create ADSL Mail Server</u>".

### 7.2 Create LAN Mail Server

You can create mail server on LAN on your own, and use it for internal communications and file exchanges.

Condition 1: on LAN environment.

Condition 2: Install AAMail on LAN server.

It is very easy to create dedicated mail server in LAN. After installed AAMail, you already have a LAN mail server, and it can provide mail communication services to the employees on LAN without any other settings.

#### The steps to create LAN mail server are as follow.

- Normally, you only need to keep clicking the "Next" button till finish, and then you can run AAMail on your server. After installed AAMail, if your firewall does not allow AAMail connect to the Internet; please enable AAMail in your firewall then (For details, please refer to "Install AAMail Server").
- 2) Go to AAMail main interface, on the menu bar, click "Settings -> Domain settings" to create mail domain. And you can name the domain for LAN mail server as you wish (such as 123.com, 234.net). Please click the "Domain type" combo box, and select "Standard mail server mode". Then, you can select or uncheck the "Allow receive incoming mails from Internet" and "Allow send outgoing mails to Internet" check boxes according to your needs (For details, please refer to "Create and Manage Domain Name").
- 3) Create account. The "Mail settings" in domain settings priors to the "Permission" in account. Thus, if you have selected the "Allow receive incoming mails from Internet" and "Allow send outgoing mails to Internet" check boxes when you create domain name, then, you can individually set whether to allow "Receive from Internet" and "Send to Internet" for each account (For details, please refer to "Create Mail Account").
- 4) Some users may need a further control, for example, they want only some of the employees can send mails to the specified external mail addresses. (The premise is that the "Allow send outgoing mails to Internet" check box is unchecked in the "Mail settings" of domain settings.) Then, we can double click the account which you'd like to allow it send outgoing mails to Internet, in the pop up "Account" dialog box, select the "Permission" tab, click the "Send to Internet" combo box, select "Forbid", and then click the "Exception" button to add white list.
- 5) Up to this point, according to your settings, every account will have its different permission on sending and receiving external mails. AAMail supports multiple domains, and you can set different modes for different domains.
- If you want to use mail client, such as Outlook, to send and receive mails, please refer to "<u>Mail Client</u>".
- 7) If you want to use Webmail to send and receive mails, please refer to "Webmail".

The LAN mail server can be used as an efficient communication tool, such as group discussion, notification, large file transfer etc, which greatly improved employees' work efficiency. AAMail has domain and account level's permission of sending and receiving Internet mails, which provides different mail communication services for different users.

### 7.3 Create Internet Mail Server

#### 1. Create Internet Mail Server

If we use DDN leased line networking or ISP hosting, how can we create Internet standard server?

Condition 1: An Internet domain.

Condition 2: A fixed Internet IP address.

If your server is using a leased line, or a fiber connect to the Internet, or ISP hosting, normally, your server has a fixed IP address, then you can create an Internet mail server of standard mail server mode.

The creation processes can be divided into two main parts, one is the installation on server, and the other is the related parameter settings of domain. Suppose your mail domain is "ourcompany.com", and the server's external IP address is "123.123.123.123".

#### 2. The Installation Processes on Server

- 1) Install AAMail. For details, please refer to "Install AAMail Server".
- If your server is connected after firewall, please pay attention to open port 25/110/80 in firewall. For details, please refer to "Enable AAMail Mail Server in Firewall".
- If your server is connected after router, please pay attention to map port 25/110/80 in router. For details, please refer to "Enable AAMail Mail Server in Router".
- 4) Create mail domain "ourcompany.com" in AAMail (Please pay attention to click the "Domain type" combo box, and select "Standard mail server mode").
- 5) Create new account. For details, please refer to "Create Mail Account".

#### 3. Set Mail Domain Name MX Record

- 1) Login the management webpage of your ISP domain service.
- Set mail domain name MX Record (For details, please refer to "<u>MX Record</u>") (Normally, MX will take effect after about 8 hours).

#### 4. Diagnose

- On the menu bar, click "Tool -> Diagnose sending" to detect whether you can send mails to Internet or not.
- 2) On the menu bar, click "Tool -> Diagnose MX" to detect whether the IP address recorded in domain MX is the same as your server IP.
- On the menu bar, click "Tool -> Diagnose RBL" to detect whether your server IP has been listed to the anti-spam black list or not.

#### 5. Outlook and Webmail

- If you want to use mail client, such as Outlook, to send and receive mails, please refer to "<u>Mail Client</u>".
- 2) If you want to use Webmail to send and receive mails, please refer to "Webmail".

After operating according to the above steps successfully, you can create a standard Internet mail server then. When you are sending mails to Internet or receiving mails from Internet, you can set the sending and receiving permission, for details, please refer to "Permission".

### 7.4 Create ADSL Mail Server

# We use ADSL dial-up networking to create mail server (without a fixed IP address), how can we create Internet mail server?

Condition 1: Internet domain name.

Condition 2: The server does not have a fixed Internet IP address.

If your server is connected to the Internet via ADSL, you can also create a mail server. Because the dynamic IP address always changes, you need to install dynamic domain software, no matter how the IP changes, it will always bind your domain name with your server together.

Currently, many domain name service providers offer both standard and dynamic domain name services, such as PeanutHull (http://www.oray.net) and XiWang network (http://www.3322.org) etc. You can contact the domain name service provider to apply your top-level standard domain name, such as "ourcompany.com", or apply DDNS, such as "mydomain.vicp.net" or "mydomain.3322.net" etc.

# How to bind ADSL domain name? If your domain name is a free dynamic one, the installation and configuration processes are as follows.

Suppose your domain name service provider is PeanutHull, login the management webpage.

- 1) Apply for a free domain name, suppose it is "mydomain.vicp.net".
- 2) Download the PeanutHull client software, and then install it on your server. After running PeanutHull, add the "mydomain.vicp.net" Dynamic Domain Name Service.
- 3) Installed AAMail. For details, please refer to "Install AAMail Server".
- If your server is connected after firewall and router, please pay attention to open port 25/110 in firewall, and map port 25/110 in router. For details, please refer to "<u>Firewall</u> and <u>Router</u>".
- 5) Create a mail domain in AAMail, such as "mydomain.vicp.net". And select "Standard server mode."
- Create accounts for everyone in AAMail. For details, please refer to "<u>Create Mail</u> <u>Account</u>".

- If you want to use mail client to send and receive mails, such as Outlook, please refer to "<u>Mail Client</u>".
- 8) If you want to use Webmail to send and receive mails, please refer to "Webmail".

# If your domain name is the top standard one, the installation and configuration processes are as follows.

Suppose your top-level domain name is "ourcompany.com", and your domain name service provider is PeanutHull.

- 1) Apply for a free domain name, such as "mydomain.vicp.net".
- Create a new MX record under the domain name of "ourcompany.com", and set it as "mydomain.vicp.net".
- 3) Download the PeanutHull client software, and then install it on your server. After running PeanutHull, add the "mydomain.vicp.net" Dynamic Domain Name Service.
- 4) Installed AAMail. For details, please refer to "Install AAMail Server".
- If your server is connected after firewall and router, please pay attention to open port 25/110 in firewall, and map port 25/110 in router. For details, please refer to "<u>Firewall</u> and <u>Router</u>".
- 6) Create a mail domain in AAMail, such as "mydomain.vicp.net". And select "Standard server mode."
- Create accounts for everyone in AAMail. For details, please refer to "<u>Create Mail</u> <u>Account</u>".
- If you want to use mail client to send and receive mails, such as Outlook, please refer to "<u>Mail Client</u>".
- 9) If you want to use Webmail to send and receive mails, please refer to "Webmail".

Because ADSL connection is a dynamic IP address server, and many overseas or domestic mail servers will directly regard the mails which are sent from the dynamic IP addresses as spams. Therefore, if you are using ADSL mail server, normailly, we'd like to recommend that you use map mail server mode. For details, please refer to "<u>Map Mail Server</u>".

## 8 Map Mail Server

### 8.1 What Is Map Mail Server

When you create a domain name, if you click the "Domain type" combo box, and select "Map mail server mode", then AAMail will run with map mail server mode.

Under map mail server mode, AAMail will only deal with the email communications among internal employees. For external emails which are sent by employees, AAMail will automatically forward them to the external ISP mail server system, and then it will send out these emails. And mails replied by the external customers will be sent to the ISP mailbox, and then AAMail will automatically receive these replied mails via remote receiving mails function (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

We will take examples to illustrate the operations. Suppose you already have had an ISP mailbox, such as "test.com" (a billing mailbox), then you can create a domain as "mytest.com" in AAMail, and use map mail server mode to bind the "test.com" mailbox. The mail interaction cases are as follows.

#### Case 1 Mails from "xx@mytest.com" send to "yy@mytest.com"

Suppose both of "xx@mytest.com" and "yy@mytest.com" are internal mail accounts. When they send mails to each other, then it is called internal mails exchanges, which will be handled by AAMail. When AAMail received mails from "xx@mytest.com", it will send them directly to "yy@mytest.com", which means this was solved in the internal LAN and will not involve any external communications. It is very efficient.

#### Case 2 Mails from "xx@mytest.com" send to "zz@other.com"

Suppose "xx@mytest.com" is an internal mail account, and "zz@other.com" is an

external mail account. When "xx@mytest.com" sends mails to "zz@other.com", this will become external mail exchanges. And AAMail will send the received mails from "xx@mytest.com" to the ISP bound mailbox (assume it is "xx@test.com"), and then the ISP bound mailbox will send these mails to "zz@other.com". And the mails which are received by "zz@other.com" were from "xx@test.com".

#### Case 3 Mails from "zz@other.com" send to "xx@test.com"

Suppose "mytest.com" is only an internal domain name, and the external customers do not know this, of course, they don't need to know this. Mails from the external customers will be sent to the company's ISP mailbox (such as "test.com"). AAMail will regularly check whether there are new mails on the ISP server, if there are, it will remote receiving these mails from "xx@test.com" and save the received mails to "xx@mytest.com" mailbox.

### 8.2 The Advantages of Map Mail Server Mode

If you choose the map mail server mode, then your server does not require a fixed IP, and there is no need to apply for Internet domain names. It only needs that the staffs already have the company mailboxes which were provided by the ISP service provider. Under map mail server mode, the <u>domain name</u> of the mailbox can be named as you wish (such as name the virtual domain as "123.com" or "234.net" etc). Though this virtual domain name will not be recognized by the Internet, it can be used for internal email communications among employees. As the outgoing mails will be sent by the ISP service provider at last, the sender of the received mails will be the ISP email address, rather than the AAMail's internal email address.

Using the map mail server mode, you do not have to abandon the previous ISP company mailbox while you use AAMail to manage employee emails, which can be said to be double insurance.

#### 1) Higher Efficiency of Email Communications

The internal LAN email communications will be handled by AAMail. And the mails which are sent and received among employees will no longer need to send to Internet first, and then collect from the Internet. Thus, the efficiency of email communications is greatly improved, especially in sending large size emails and when the Internet speed is not too fast, the advantage of map mail server mode can be seen obviously.

For the external emails, AAMail will continuously remote receiving the external mails from the ISP mailbox and store them to the local mailbox, which will also improve the efficiency of sending and receiving external emails.

#### 2) Employees' Emails Expansion without Cost

ISP's mailbox capacity is relatively small. If you want to expand the mailbox capacity for each employee, then it will be a big overhead. Using AAMail's map mail server mode,

you can save this large sums of money, because AAMail will continuously collect the mails from ISP mailbox, then the ISP mailbox does not require an expansion. As long as the local hard disk size is large enough, AAMail can provide unlimited space for these emails.

#### 3) Enhance the Internet Email Communications' Ability

Suppose there is only a part of your company computers can access the Internet directly, but you want every computer send and receive Internet emails. Then you can install AAMail and use it to exchange mails, thus letting the company's all computers send and receive Internet emails. AAMail supports multiple domain names, and different domain names can be set different server modes, so you can easily set different Internet sending and receiving permission for different users.

#### 4) Mail Group and Mail Monitor Function

The mail functions which are provided by ISP service providers are often very limited, such as <u>mail group</u> and <u>mail monitor function</u>. AAMail's map mail server mode allows you keeping the ISP mailbox while using AAMail's powerful management capabilities, such as mail group, mail monitor, mail clear, mail filter, address book management and a more powerful function of Webmail.

#### 5) Unified Backup and Anti-virus

If you use AAMail to exchange Internet mails, then you can easily install anti-virus software on the mail server, and reduce the mail viruses to spread in and out of the company, which will improve the security of the company network. Meanwhile, ISP service does not support mail backup, but you can use AAMail to backup mails and avoid losing important data.

### 8.3 How to Apply Map Mail Server Mode

It is very easy to apply map mail server mode. Suppose your ISP mail hosting domain name is "yaozhi.com", POP3 and SMTP servers' addresses are "mail.yaozhi.com". Then, you can create an internal domain name in AAMail, please click the "Domain type" combo box, and select "Map mail server mode" (Figure 1-1). The internal domain name can be the same or different with the external one, normally, they are the same.

Dor	main settings				<b>X</b>
Be	asic settings 🕅	ail settings	'ebmail settings	Filter rules	
	Ø Click for help	Domain name Main domain	test.com	▼	Disabled
		Domain type	Map mail server	. mode	•
	Default	mailbox size	1024 (M	)	
	Doma	in max volume	0 04	) 📃 Limited v	olume
	Ac	count maximum	0	Limited numb	er
L					
				OK	Cancel

Figure 1-1

After creating the domain name in AAMail, the next step is to create accounts, and bind relative external ISP mailbox for each internal account. We will take creating account (such as "support@yaozhi.com") for example.

 On the toolbar, click the "Account" button, then you will see the "Account creation wizard", type "support" in the "Account" edit box, and set other parameters. The password you typed here will have no relationship with the ISP mailbox's password. Then, click the "Next" button (Figure 1-2).

Account creation w	vizard		×
-Basic information	on 1/3		
G	Account	support 🙋 youngzsoft.com 🔻	
Click for help	Password	•••••	
Disabled	User name	support	
	Mailbox size	1024 📝 Limited (M)	
	Account alias		
	Account type	Normal account	
	Manager		
			_
		Back Next Cancel	

Figure 1-2

2) It will pop up the "Map settings" dialog box. Type the ISP mailbox connection parameters here, including ISP server address, account and password. When finished, click the "Detect" button to test whether the parameters have been correctly set or not. Then, click the "Next" button (Figure 1-3).

Account creation wiz	ard			×
-Map settings 2/4-				
G	Email	support@yaozhi.com	📝 Enabled	
Click for help	POP3 server	mail.yaozhi.com	Port 110 🔲 SSL	
	SMTP server	mail.yaozhi.com	Port 25 📃 SSL	
0%	POP3 account	upport@yaozhi.com 1	Password	
Detect	SMTP account	upport@yaozhi.com ]	Password	
Reset	-	Wy server need auth	entication when sending	
	Copy option	Always leave copies	▼ 30 days	
		Back	Next Can	cel

Figure 1-3

- 3) Continue other steps to finish creating account.
- 4) Finish binding other accounts according to the above steps.

#### How to edit "Remote POP3 account"?

If you want to add, modify or delete remote POP3 account, in the account list, double click the account, in the pop up "Account" dialog box, click the "POP3 remote" tab, and then you can add, modify or delete the "Remote POP3 account" (Figure 1-4).

Account				
General Permission	POP3 remote More	rules	Monitor Informati	on
Ø	Map to remote	suppor	rt@yaozhi.com	•
Click for help	Email	Valid	POP3	SMTP
_	support@yao	Yes	mail.yaozhi.c	mail.yaozhi.c
dd				
I Derece				
			C	OK Cancel

Figure 1-4

#### Introduction about the "map to account".

Standard Mode: Not allow binding the account.

Map Mode: Allow setting remote POP3 account for each account.

Share Mode: Allow setting remote POP3 account for normal account, administrator, and special manager account, but not allow for special local staff account.

### 8.4 Co-create Mail Server with ISP Company Mailbox

#### I don't want to give up the existing ISP company mailbox, and I want to use AAMail. How to do this?

Condition 1: ISP company mailbox.

Condition 2: Install AAMail on the server.

If you don't want to give up the existing ISP company mailbox, and want to use AAMail. You can choose the map mail server mode to create mail system. AAMail's map mail server mode can help you save the money of purchasing ISP mailbox space. What's more, it can help you improve the speed of internal mail exchanges greatly.

it is very easy to install map mail server, you don't need the fixed IP or apply Internet domain name, all it needs is that your server can connect the Internet normally. The specific configurations are as follows.

- 1) Install AAMail. For details, please refer to "Install AAMail Server".
- 2) If your server is connected after firewall, please pay attention to open port 25/110/80 in firewall. For details, please refer to "Enable AAMail Mail Server in Firewall".
- If your server is connected after router, please pay attention to map port 25/110/80 in router. For details, please refer to "Enable AAMail Mail Server in Router".
- 4) Create a domain name. For details, please refer to "<u>Create and Manage Domain</u> <u>Name</u>". Please pay attention to click the "Domain type" combo box, and select "Map mail server mode", and then select the "Allow receive incoming mails from Internet", "Allow send outgoing mails to Internet" and "Send to Internet for nonexistent local recipients" check boxes.
- 5) Create needed account, and set the map binding parameters to every account. For details, please refer to "Create Mail Account".
- If you want to use mail client, such as Outlook, to send and receive mails, please refer to "<u>Mail Client</u>".
- 7) If you want to use Webmail to send and receive mails, please refer to "Webmail".

Employees can set the map binding parameters via Webmail themselves. But the administrator can limit the staff accounts and decide whether to allow employees to modify the "Remote POP3 account" parameters via Webmail themselves.

### 8.5 Branches Create Internal Mail Server

# We are a branch, how to create a mail server to match with the headquarters' server?

Condition 1: The headquarters has created a mail system.

Condition 2: The branch installs AAMail.

The internal mail exchanges are frequent in the branch, and the attachments sent with the mails are usually very large. The branch was using the headquarters' unified company mail server system before, so the mails which are exchanged in the branch internal, also need to receive from and send to the headquarters via Internet, thus, the efficiency is very low, especially when send and receive large mails. Under this circumstance, the branch may want a mail server which can match with the headquarters' server to make the its internal communications more convenient, and keep communicating with the headquarters smoothly.

AAMail provided a special solution for this kind of demand. It can realize creating a local mail server for the branch, and use the same domain name with the headquarters, which will ensure the smooth internal mail exchanges in the branch, and will not influence the mail communications among the branch, headquarters and the external. This solution is the combination of AAMail's "Map mail server mode" and "Send to Internet for nonexistent local recipients" functions.

It is very easy to create branch server. Suppose your headquarters mailbox domain name is "head.com", the creation steps are as follows.

- 1) Install AAMail on the branch's server. For details, please refer to "Quick Start".
- 2) On AAMail menu bar, click "Settings -> Domain settings" to create a new domain name, such as "test.com". Click the "Domain type" combo box, and select the "Map mail server mode", then click the "Next" button. Select the "Send to Internet for nonexistent local recipients" check box. For details, please refer to "<u>Create and</u> <u>Manage Domain Name</u>".
- 3) Create the relative local mail accounts with the headquarters for the employees. Suppose the branch's previous mail account is "test@test.com", on the toolbar, click the "Account" button to begin creating account. Please pay attention to fill in the headquarters' mailbox information in "Map settings 2/4" to make this account be bound with the headquarters' mailbox. For details, please refer to "<u>How to Apply Map Mail Server Mode</u>".
- 4) Now, the branch's employees can configure Outlook to send and receive mails. Note that the POP3 and SMTP mail server addresses in Outlook should be modified to be the IP address of the branch server. For details, please refer to "<u>Mail Client</u>".
- 5) If you want to use Webmail to send and receive mails, please refer to "Webmail".

After configured according to the above steps, we can take "test@test.com" for example. The external mails which are supposed to send to "test@test.com" will be sent to the headquarters server, AAMail will automatically collect these mails from the headquarters'

server to the branch's server, and then the employees of the branch will receive the external mails.

When the account of "test@test.com" sends mails to other local accounts in the branch, then AAMail will directly handle it, thus, even if the mails are very large, the sending and receiving efficiency can be still assured. When the account of "test@test.com" sends mails to the external or headquarters (branch local nonexistent mailbox), then these mails will be sent via the headquarters' server.

## 9 Share Mail Server

### 9.1 What Is Share Mail Server

We will take Sales Department for example to illustrate the functions of share mail server. As the sales department's staff mobility is larger, if salesman Alex changes his or her job, then it maybe inconvenient for the customers who kept in touch with salesman Alex via emails before. With share mail server mode, you can let all of the sales department staffs use the same email address, such as "sales@share.com". Therefore, even if salesmen changed, customers will always be very easy to keep in touch with you via emails (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

Share mail server mode can be divided into three types, they are, <u>normal account</u>, <u>special local staff account</u> and <u>special manager account</u>.

Normal account can be assigned to unrestricted users, such as leaders. Special manager account allows creating multiple departments or groups, which can be used as a unified external contact account. Special local staff account can be used to send and receive internal mails normally, but if you want to use it to send and receive Internet mails, it must via manager mailbox. In the process of communicating with the external customers, they will only know the staffs' name and manager mailbox.

### 9.2 Share Mail Server's Operating Principle

#### 1. Share Mail Server's Operating Principle

We will use actual cases to illustrate how to manage the sendings and receivings, and how to support mail auditing via AAMail's share mail server.

Suppose the company's special manager account is "admin@share.com", two of the

special local staff accounts are "zs@share.com" (Zhangsan) and "ls@share.com" (Lisi). The contact email address on the two staffs and manager's business cards is "admin@share.com", and then customers will contact these three people via "admin@share.com". Please see the cases below.

#### 2. Case 1 Customer Sends Mails to the Unified External Mailbox



When customers get the business card of Zhangsan, if they want to contact him, they will send an email to "admin@share.com". After the manager mailbox "admin@share.com" received this email, the manager has two ways to deal with it.

- 1) Manual handling, that is, the manager use Webmail's mail transfer function to specify a staff to reply this email.
- 2) Automatic handling, which means setting auto transfer unnamed manager mails to all its staff, therefore, both of Zhangsan and Lisi will receive this email.

If the customer tries to send email directly to Zhangsan ("zs@share.com"), it will depend on whether this account has the permission to receive Internet mails. If it doesn't, then this mail will be rejected directly. If it does, then both of Zhangsan and the manager will receive this email.

#### 3. Case 2 Zhangsan Replies to Customer after Receiving Mails



The manager, Zhangsan and Lisi had received an email from the customer, suppose that Zhangsan will reply this email, then, the replied email from Zhangsan will be sent to the manager mailbox first, and then keep a copy in it. Finally, this email will be sent to the customer from the manager mailbox.

Zhangsan's email address is "zs@share.com", and the customer will receive that email from "Zhangsan", that is, the sender's name is "Zhangsan", but the email address will be

replaced automatically by the unified external mailbox, namely, "admin@share.com". All the external mails sent by Zhangsan and Lisi will be automatically kept copies in the manager mailbox, and the manager will see which mails were sent from Zhangsan to the customer, and which were sent from Lisi to the customer in the Webmail's mail list.

#### 4. Case 3 Customer Replies to Zhangsan



The customer will see the email he received is from "Zhangsan". When the customer replies this mail via mail client or Webmail, the recipient email address will be automatically filled in with "Zhangsan".

The customer's replied email will be sent to the manager mailbox first, but this case is different from case 1, that is, the recipient's email address is specified to be "Zhangsan". Then AAMail will automatically transfer this email copy to Zhangsan according to the name, and other staffs will not receive this email, which ensured Zhangsan's continuous communication with the customer

Of course, there are always Zhangsan's sending and receiving mails' copies in the manager mailbox, and the manager can transfer these mails to other staffs at any time.

### 9.3 Specific Features

- 1) Supports monitoring the staff's sending and receiving mails in the manager mailbox.
- Supports auto keeping a copy of staff's sending and receiving Internet mails in the manager mailbox.
- 3) Supports auto transferring the received Internet mails to the staff according to the name, which ensured the smooth communications among staffs and customers.
- 4) Supports auto transferring unnamed manager mails to all its staff.
- 5) Supports <u>mail transfer</u>. The manager can transfer mails to staffs.
- 6) Supports <u>mail auditing</u>. The staffs' mails would be sent to Internet after the manager's check and approve.
- 7) Supports check timeout (If the mail is not checked after 48 hours, it will be regarded as proved and auto sent out).

### 9.4 How to Apply Share Mail Server Mode

There are two methods to set "Share Mail server mode".

#### Method 1

When <u>creating a domain name</u>, click the "Domain type" combo box, and select "Share mail server mode" (Figure 1-1).

Create domain st	tep 1/4	
-Basic settings	;	
	Domain name	test.com 🔲 Disabled
	Main domain	- Alias
Ulick for help	Domain type	Share mail server mode 🔹
Defaul	t mailbox size	1024 (M)
Dom	ain max volume	0 (M) 🗌 Limited volume
A	ccount maximum	0 Limited number
		Back Next Cancel

Figure 1-1

#### Method 2

 In the account list, double click the "mail domain" (such as double click "test.com") (Figure 1-2).

🥑 AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)											
Operation Account Tool Settings Help											
🚨 Account 💿 Group 🌖	Domain	🖗 Service	🔀 Settings	💧 🎦 Purcha	ase 🔀 Shutd	lown					
Account & Status	Account		User name everyone	Department	Type Group	Inbox/All (2)	Used	Ratio	Volume [-1]		
	🚨 admin@te	st.com	Administrator		Domain admin	0/0	0.0M	0.0%	[-1]		
	🚨 postmaste	r@test.com	Postmaster		Account	0/0	0.0M	0.0%	[-1]		
	•								Þ		
[15:48:36]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome! [17:07:26]-[System] Services: NOT installed, Stopped! [15:48:36]-[System] LAN=192.168.1.105, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1											
Custon / CMTD > DOD2 > Denote > Outering /											
System A SMIP A PUPS A		algoing X Inco	ming/				2012 (	1 22 1	7.07.25		
Ready Total=3 30:	=support@yo	oungzsoft.c	om				2013-0	1-22 1	/:0/:25		

Figure 1-2

 It will pop up the "Domain settings" dialog box, click the "Domain type" combo box, and select "Share mail server mode", and then click the "OK" button to complete the operation (Figure 1-3).

Domain settings	
Basic settings Mail settin	gs Webmail settings Filter rules
Domain n Click for help	ame test.com Disabled
Domain t	ype Share mail server mode 🔹
Default mailbox s	ize 1024 (M)
Domain max vol	ume 0 (M) 📃 Limited volume
Account maxi	mum 0 📃 Limited number
	OK Cancel

Figure 1-3

After selected the "Share mail server mode", the next step is to create special manager

account and special local staff account.

#### **1.1 Create Special Manager Account**

Suppose the special manager account is "sales@share.com".

 In the process of creating an account, click the "Account type" combo box, and select "Special manager account". The other steps are the same as creating an account (Figure 1-4). (If the account has been created, you can edit the accoun, and then select "Special manager account").

Account creation w	vizard			
Basic information 1/3				
G	Account	sales 🙆 test.com 👻		
Click for help	Password	•••••		
Disabled	Vser name	sales		
	Mailbox size	1024 📝 Limited (M)		
	Account alias			
	Account type	Special manager account 🔹		
	Manager	<b>v</b>		
		Back Next Cancel		

Figure 1-4

 After created the special manager account, you can double click the account, then, it will pop up the "Account" dialog box, click the "More rules" tab, you can set the special manager account's mail transfer properties here (Figure 1-5).

Account	×
General Permission POP3 remote More rules Monitor Information	
Auto forward rules         Auto reply settings           Click for help         Mail filter rules         Signature settings	
🔽 Show in Public address book.	
Auto transfer unnamed manager mails to all its staff. All outgoing mails need to be checked before send out. Uncheckuped mails will be auto sent out after 48 (hours) Checkup manager	
OK	Cancel

#### Figure 1-5

Auto transfer unnamed manager mails to all its staff: If the special manager account received a mail as "Zhangsansales@share.com", then the email address has been specified a name ("Zhangsan"), so AAMail will auto transfer this email to Zhangsan. If the special manager account received a mail as "sales@share.com", there is no specified name, then you can choose whether to auto transfer unnamed manager mails to all its staff.

#### **1.2 Create Special Local Staff Account**

- 1) After created special manager account, you can create a special local staff account.
- 2) In the process of creating an account, click the "Account type" combo box, and select "Special local staff account". And then click the "manager" combo box, select special manager account (such as "sales@share.com"). Other steps are the same as creating an account (Figure 1-6).

Account creation w	vizard			
Basic information 1/3				
G	Account	zs 🙆 test.com 💌		
Click for help	Password	•••••		
Disabled	User name	Z 5		
	Mailbox size	1024 📝 Limited (M)		
	Account alias			
	Account type	Special local staff account 🔹		
	Manager	sales@test.com 💌		
		Back Next Cancel		

Figure 1-6

3) After created a special local staff account, you can double click the account, then, it will pop up the "Account" dialog box, click the "More rules" tab, you can set the relevant checking parameters of the special local staff account here (Figure 1-7).

Account				
General Permission POP3 remote More rules Monitor Information				
Auto forward rules       Auto reply settings         Click for help       Mail filter rules       Signature settings         Show in Public address book.				
Auto transfer unnamed manager mails to all its staff.				
All outgoing mails need to be checked before send out.				
Uncheckuped mails will be auto sent out after 40 (hours) Checkup manager sales@test.com -				
OK Cancel				

Figure 1-7

All outgoing mails need to be checked before send out: When this check box is selected, the special local staff account's outgoing mails need to be checked, after approved by the special manager account, these mails shall be sent out. And the checkup manager needs to log in Webmail to complete the checking process.

**Uncheckuped mails will be auto sent out after (hours):** In the edit box, if you enter the number "0", the mail will always in check pending; If you enter the number "48", then once the mail is not checked after 48 hours, it will be auto sent out.

**Checkup manager:** The checkup manager can be the same account with manager, also, it can be another manager account. After the checkup manager logged in Webmail, he or she can check the outgoing mails (such as All send and Reject send).

After operated the above three steps, you can apply the share mail server mode then. This application will not only help you set a unified external mail account, but also help you check mails, therefore, during the process of using mail system to send and receive mails in the company, you don't have to worry anything.

### 9.5 Mail Checkup Function in Share Mail Server Mode

#### 1. Mail Checkup in Share Mail Server Mode

With more and more frequently used email application in the company, the formality and legality of email has been gradually recognized, and the control of sending and receiving mails are increasingly concerned by company managers, therefore, the mail auditing function emerged. To make up the defect of the uncontrollability during daily mail exchanges in the company, we particularly developed the mail checkup function.
#### 2. What Is Mail Checkup

Mail checkup means that the mail server holds the mail temporarily, and then the checkup manager decides whether to allow sending this mail out or not. Mail checkup is a special function in share mail server mode. You can choose to let the manager check the special local staff account's mail before it being sent out, or send bounce if the mail was not approved by the manager, or directly delete the mail without sending bounce.

AAMail is a server which supports mail checkup and creating normal account, special manager account and special local staff account at the same time. Only the special local staff account's mails will be checked. Generally speaking, only the mails which are sent to Internet need to be checked. The mails which are exchanged among the internal employees will not be checked in AAMail's default settings.

#### 3. Handle the Being Checked Mails

Only when the checkup manager logged in Webmail, then he or she can handle the being checked mails. The steps are as follows.

- 1) The checkup manager logs in Webmail. For details about the checkup manager, please refer to "<u>Create Special Manager Account</u>".
- 2) On the left side of the form, click the "Mail checkup", you can find the information about "From, To, Subject, Date, Size etc.", and you can handle the mail in two ways, they are, All send and Reject send.

If your company needs to check the exchanged mails of the internal employees, then you can open the config.sys file of "mailserver.ini" with Notepad (AAMail installation folder -> data folder -> mailserver.ini), under the [System], add a line of new parameter, that is, "CheckupLocal = 1", then save it. In this way, the exchanged mails of the internal employees will be checked as well.

## 9.6 Create Unified External Mailbox

# How to create a unified external mailbox for salesmen to communicate with customers in foreign trade company?

Condition 1: Internet domain name.

Condition 2: Fixed Internet IP address.

You can use AAMail to create a share mail server. There are two common requirements in foreign trade companies, they are:

- 1) Using a unified external mail account to avoid the email address being frequently changed when communicate with customers.
- 2) Monitoring staff's incoming and outgoing mails, not only convenient for monitoring business dealings, but also to avoid leaking the confidential information.

To create a share mail server, you need to have a registered domain name in the Internet and the server must have a fixed IP address. The creation process can be divided into two parts, one is to set domain MX record, the other is to install and configure AAMail. Suppose that your mail domain is "share.com", the server's external IP address is "123.123.123.123", and the unified external email address is "sales@share.com".

#### Set Domain MX Record

- 1) Login the management webpage of your ISP domain service.
- Set mail domain name MX Record (For details, please refer to "<u>MX Record</u>") (Normally, MX will take effect after about 8 hours).
- 3) Online testing domain MX tools: <u>http://www.aamailsoft.com/mx.php</u>, to detect whether the domain MX record has been correctly set or not.

#### Install and Configure AAMail

- 1) Install AAMail. For details, please refer to "Install AAMail Server".
- 2) If your server is connected after firewall, please pay attention to open port 25/110/80 in firewall. For details, please refer to "Enable AAMail Mail Server in Firewall".
- If your server is connected after router, please pay attention to map port 25/110/80 in router. For details, please refer to "Enable AAMail Mail Server in Router".
- 4) Create mail domain "share.com" in AAMail (Please pay attention to click the "Domain type" combo box, and select "Share mail server mode").
- 5) Create "Special manager account". For details, please refer to "<u>Create Special</u> <u>Manager Account</u>".
- 6) Create "Special local staff account". For details, please refer to "<u>Create Special</u> Local Staff Account".

# 9.7 Share Mail Server Mode Application Case

#### **Customer Requirements**

Special manager account: Need a unified account to send and receive mails.

Special local staff account: The mails replied by customers will be specified or auto transferred to the staff by the manager account, and these mails will be auto kept copies in manager mailbox.

#### **Specific Steps**

- Set special manager account (unified external account). For details, please refer to "Create Special Manager Account" in "<u>How to Apply Share Mail Server Mode</u>".
- Set special local staff account. For details, please refer to "Create Special Local Staff Account" in "<u>How to Apply Share Mail Server Mode</u>".
- 3) If the special manager account received a mail as "Zhangsansales@share.com", then the email address has been specified a name ("Zhangsan"), so AAMail will auto transfer this email to Zhangsan. If the special manager account received a mail as "sales@share.com", there is no specified name, then you can choose to auto transfer unnamed manager mails to all its staff, or manually transfer to the specified

staff, or auto transfer to the specified staff.

Auto transfer unnamed manager mails to all its staff: For details, please refer to "Auto transfer unnamed manager mails to all its staff" in "<u>How to Apply Share Mail Server</u> <u>Mode</u>".

**Manually transfer to the specified staff:** For details, please refer to "AAMail Mail Transfer" in "<u>Webmail Mail</u> Folders".

Auto transfer to the specified staff: For details, please refer to "Mail Filter" in "Webmail Configure Function".

# 10 Webmail on AAMail

# 10.1 Webmail Interface

After logged in Webmail, you will enter into Webmail main interface. The main interface is the mailbox summary as default, then you can find the Receive, Compose, Mail search, Mail folder, Inbox, Sent, Drafts, Favorite, Spam and Trash, Network disk and so on (Figure 1-2). You can change the login main interface in "Configure -> Preference" and choose the main interface as mailbox summary, or Inbox or Compose after logged into Webmail.

Webmail Login Interface (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

Webmail Main Interface (Figure 1-2).

🚱 AAMail Server - Webma 🗙										
← → C 🗋 192.168.1	.253/fmain.asp									<b></b>
🕑 WebMail		1					2	admin@test.com	2013-07-27	O Logout
🛃 Receive 🙀 Compose				W	elcome admin@tes	t.com				
A Mail search			Summary:	4 message(s) / 3 u	inread(s), 4 MB / 2,048 M	В	0.2%			
Mail folders	Mail folder		Messages/unreads	Space u	ised	Space	e Ratio		Empty   D	əlete
Sept (0/1)	😬 Inbox		3/3		2 MB		0.1%	5	41	
Draffs (0/0)	😬 Sent		1/0		2 MB		0.1%	5	41	
Eavorite (0/0)	Drafts		0/0		0 KB		0.0%	5		
1 Spam (0/0)	+ Favorite		0/0		0 KB		0.0%		- <b>-</b>	
Trash (0/0)	📋 Spam		0/0		0 KB		0.0%		41	
Network disk	rasn		070		UKB		0.0%	5	*1	
Address book				🛅 New folder	name	[Create folder]				
Administration					2013-07-27 11:08:55					
Domain		Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday		
X Configure			1	2	3	4	5	6		
S Userinfo		7	8	9	10	11	12	13		
Preference		21	15	23	17	18	19	20		
🙀 Auto filter		28	29	30	31	20	20	21	-	
🙀 Auto reply										
🐭 Auto forward										
💋 Pop3 remote										
Rassword										
🤝 Signature										
o Logout										

Figure 1-2

## 10.2How to Visit Webmail

- 1) Click anywhere on AAMail main interface, and press "F9" on the keyboard, then you can visit Webmail (This is a shortcut to visit Webmail on the mail server).
- 2) In the browser's address bar, type "http://LAN IP/mail/" (http://192.168.1.10/mail/) to visit Webmail (This method can be only used in LAN).
- In the browser's address bar, type "http://public network IP/mail/" (http://220.5.6.7/mail /) to visit Webmail (This method can be used in the Internet and LAN).
- 4) In the browser's address bar, type "domain/mail" to visit Webmail.

If the Webmail login interface can be displayed properly, then it proves that the Webmail is running normally. If there is error when visiting, you need to open IE browser, and click "Tools -> Internet Options -> Advanced", then uncheck the "Show friendly HTTP error messages" checkbox. After that, the specific error message will be displayed, which will help you to analyze the problem then to solve it (For details, please refer to "Webmail FAQs").

## **10.3Webmail Mail Folders**

#### 1. The Mail Folders of Mail Server

Click the "Mail folders", it will expand all mailboxes (such as Inbox, Sent, Drafts, Favorite,

#### Spam and Trash) (Figure 1-1).

							3	admin@test.com	2013-07-27
eive npose				Welc	ome admin@test.	com			
search			Summary:	4 message(s) / 3 unre	ad(s), 4 MB / 2,048 MB		0.2%		
tolders	Mail folder	r	Messages/unreads	Space use	1	Space	e Ratio		Empty   Delet
JOX (3/3)	😬 Inbox		3/3		2 MB		0.1%	6	41
.nt (0/1)	😬 Sent		1/0		2 MB		0.1%	6	41
aπs (0/0)	😥 Drafts		0/0		0 KB		0.0%	6	41
vorite (0/0)	+ Favorite		0/0		0 KB		0.0%	6	41
am (0/0)	Spam		0/0		0 KB		0.0%	6	41
ash (0/0)	Trash		0/0		0 KB		0.0%	6	×
vork disk				New folder na	me	[Create folder]			
ress book									
inistration					2013-07-27 11:08:55				
count									
main		Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday	
figure			1	2	3	4	5	6	
erinfo		7	8	9	10	11	12	13	
foronco		14	15	16	17	18	19	20	
to filter		21	22	23	24	25	26	27	
to filter		28	29	30	31				
to reply									
to forward									
p3 remote									
ssword									
gnature									
out									

Figure 1-1

#### 2. Read Mails

In the Webmail interface, click "Inbox", then click the bold letters (such as "test2"), you can read this mail's content now (Figure 1-2).

AAMail Server - Webma >								
← → C 🗋 192.168.1	1.253:82/1	folder.asp?page=08	ksort=maildate&desc	=1			ş	☆ 🚘 🔳
🕑 WebMail			1		🔱 admir	n@test.co	m 2013-07-27	🗿 Logout
Receive				Your folder inbox has 2 message(s) / 2 unread(s)				
Compose	Select	t All 🗙 Delete 🛛 Dro	op forever 🛛 🙀 Transfer	Mark as read			Move to Favorite	-
A Mail folders	Status	From	All dates	Subject	All mails		Date	Size
😬 Inbox (2/2)		Administrator	test2 test				2013-07-25 09:29	@ 2 M
😬 Sent (0/1)		Administrator	test test				2013-07-25 09:26	1 K
Drafts (0/0)	Rever	se 🗙 Delete 🛽 Dro	op forever 🛛 🙀 Transfer	🖂 Mark as unread			Move to Favorite	•
+ Favorite (0/0)				First      Previous      Next      Last      Jump /1 Go				
Trash (1/1)				[01-02]				
Network disk								
Address book								
Section Administration								
Account								
🕥 Domain								
X Configure								
Subserinfo								
Auto filter								
Auto reply								
Auto forward								
Pop3 remote								
Rassword								
🤝 Signature								
O Logout								

Figure 1-2

According to the above method, you can also read the mails in Sent, Drafts, Favorite, Spam and Trash.

#### 3. AAMail Mail Transfer

What is mail transfer? We will take an example to illustrate it. Suppose you received an email from Customer A, and then you need to transfer it to Staff B (Note that the transferred person must be a local user). In this case, it equals to Customer A sends an email directly to the Staff B. When Staff B received this mail, he or she will believe that this mail was sent directly by Customer A, rather than via your forwarding (Figure 1-3).

AAMail Server - Webma	× 🗖	
← → C 🗋 192.168	3.1.253:82/mailtransfer.asp?nbr=1	☆ 🔄 🗉
🕑 WebMai	admin@test.com 2013-07-27	👩 Logout
Receive     Compose     Compose     Compose     Compose     India search     Mail folders     India (folders     India (folders     India (folders)     Sent (0/1)     Condition     Favorite (0/0)     Favorite (0/0)     Faronite (0/0)     Faronite (0/0)     Faronite (0/0)     Condition     Account     Account     Account     Configure     Userinfo     Verletence     Auto foller     Auto foller     Auto foller     Auto foller     Auto foller     Auto foller     Pos3 remote     Pos3 remote     Posaword     Forsternce     Sasword     Cogout	Mail transfer What is Mail transfer? You received a mail from A, and you transfer the mail to local B (only local targets are allowed). Then this will equal to that A sends the mail to B directly, and B would think that heishe received directly the mail from A other than forwarded from you.  Subject 2013072500000025 - test Transfer Te: Keep a copy after transferred Transfer Coback	

Figure 1-3

<u>The special manager account</u> can take advantage of this function to transfer the customer email to the "special local staff account". And it will show the customer's email address, rather than the special manager account's email address in the special local staff account's Inbox.

## 10.4How to Use Webmail to Compose an Email

#### 1. Compose an Email

Click the "Compose" to enter into compose interface (Figure 1-1).

AAMail Server - Webma	×						
← → C 🗋 192.168	3.1.253:82/mailw	vrite.asp				Ę	हे 🖻 🔳
🕑 WebMai	I				🍰 admin@test.com	2013-07-27	o Logout
Receive	🙀 Compose 🛛 🐱	Goback 🔲 Save to Sent			Send	🗎 Save as a draft	
G. Mail search	To:		<address book=""></address>			Request notify	
🟠 Mail folders	T Cc:		<address book=""></address>			Add Bcc	
😬 Inbox (1/2)	Subject					High priority	
😬 Sent (0/1)	Select file:						
Drafts (0/0)	Attachments:		Attach or delete files				
Pavonie (0/0)	H1- F- T-		⊤ ∞ # □   <b>5</b> @   X   5 (%	2 19			
🙀 Trash (1/1)				4.0			
Network disk							
Address book							
Administration							
Account							
Configure							
Userinfo							
A Preference							
Auto filter							
🙀 Auto reply							
🖙 Auto forward							
ePop3 remote							
Password							
Signature	HTML editor	<ul> <li>Send via: admin@test.com</li> </ul>	¥		Send	Save as a draft	1
Cogour							

Figure 1-1

#### 2. Select the Recipient from Address Book

Click the "Address book", then it will pop up "Select recipients" interface (Figure 1-2).

📀 Address book - Google Chrome	
🕒 192.168.1.253:82/addressget.asp?tgt=To&bok=0&acc=adr	nin@test.com&ifo=4c66b93f12be28
Select recipients	
187	
Finish Cance	1
Book All contacts 📃 Page 20	)
Department Group	•
Email	Q Search
severyone" <everyone@test.com></everyone@test.com>	
************************************	
2" <2@test.com>	
3" <3@test.com>	
# "4" <4@test.com>	
5" <5@test.com	
6" <6@test.com	
7" <7@test.com>	
8" <8@test.com	
"9" <9@test.com>	
Administrator" <admin@test.com< p=""></admin@test.com<>	
Postmaster" <postmaster@test.com></postmaster@test.com>	
🖬 First 🔳 Previous 🕞 Next 🗎 Last 🍚	Jump / 1 Go
[01-12]	
Finish Cance	1

Figure 1-2

You can select a recipient or multiple recipients here. When done, click the "Finish" button.

#### 3. Attach or Delete Files

Click the "Attach or delete files" in the "Compose" interface, it will pop up the "Upload attachments" interface (Figure 1-3).

S Attachments - Google Chrome			
192.168.1.253:82/mailuploadmanager.asp?mid	d=WB13072	7000000	18
Upload attachment	s		
File: Choose File No file chosen File: Choose File No file chosen File: Choose File No file chosen File: Choose File No file chosen Upload OK	Reset		
Name	Size	Time	Delete
2013-7-24 16-00-40.jpg	6.3 K	- S	×
favicon.ico	7.8 K	- S	×
Total size of 2 files is 14	I.1 K.		

Figure 1-3

You can upload four attachments at one time, find the attachments' name, size and time information, and also delete the attachments here.

# 10.5 Mail Search Function of Mail Server

After logged in Webmai, in the Webmail main interface, click "Mail search" (Figure 1-1).

🕑 AAMail Server - Webmi 🗴 💼	
← → C 192.168.1.253.82/mailsearch.asp?mod=0	≡
WebMail	gout
Receive     Compose     Mailsearch     Mailsearch     Mailsearch     Mailsearch     Sarch socie     Mailsearch     Mailsearch     Mailsearch     Mailsearch     Mailsearch     Sarch socie     S	

Figure 1-1

Mail Search Interface (Figure 1-2).

AAMail Server - Webma >	×			L	- 0 X
← → C 🗋 192.168.3	1.253:82/mai	lsearch.asp?mod=	l	5	☆ 🚘 🔳
🕑 WebMail			admin@test.com	m 2013-07-27	🗿 Logout
Receive Compose Mail search Mail folders Inhox (1/2) Sent (0/1) Control (0/0)			Keyword:     test2       Search scope:     Quick search (in subject, sender and recipients)       Search location:     inbox       Mail date betweer:     -       Search     Reset		
Travonie (0/0)	Select All	X Delete 🛛 Drop 1	Arch result: 1 message(s) / 1 unread(s)	Move to Favorite	
Network disk	Status	From	Folder   Subject	Date∵	Size
Address book	Ad	dministrator	😬 test2 test	2013-07-25 09:29	@ 2 M
Configure 2004 Configure Configure Configure Configure Configure Luserinto Preference Auto filter Auto filter Auto forward Pop3 remote Configure	Select All	X Delete 🛛 Drop 1	orever 🔛 Mark as unread Int First int Previous in Next in Last @ Jump // 1 Ga [01-01]	Nove to Favorite	×
Signature					

Figure 1-2

Keyword: Type the keywords for searching.

**Search scope:** There are two search modes, one is "Quick search (in subject, sender and recipients)", and the other is "Full text search (in entire mail content)".

**Search location:** Select the search location (such as Inbox, Sent, Drafts, Favorite, Spam, Trash and All folders).

Mail date between: Select the start date and end date.

# **10.6 Monitor Folders**

#### **1. Monitor Folders**

Click the "Monitor folders", then the <u>monitor</u> summary information will be displayed on the right side of the form (Figure 1-1).

Mail tolders         Monitor folder         Messages/unreads         Space used         Ratio         Employed           @ Monitor folders         Monitor folder         Messages/unreads         Space used         Ratio         Employed           @ Monitor folders         Monitor folder         Messages/unreads         Space used         Ratio         Employed           @ Monitor folders         Monitor folder         Messages/unreads         Space used         Ratio         Employed           @ Monitor folders         Monitor folder         Messages/unreads         Space used         Ratio         Employed           @ Monitor folders         0/0         0/08         0.0%         4         4           @ Monitor folder         0/0         0/08         0.0%         4         4           @ Indox (r)         0         0/0         0/08         0.0%         4         4           @ Indox (r)         0/0         0/08         0.0%         4	v i Delete
Mail search Mail search Monitor search Moni	v i Delete
Monitor search Monitor search g inbox (s7)         Monitor folder         Messagesunreads         Space used         Ratio         Emp Monitor S S R (B)           g inbox (s7)         1         8 KB         0.1%         4           g inbox (s7)         1         0.00         0.KB         0.0%         4           g Archive on 1 S parm (s0)         1         0.00         0.KB         0.0%         4           g S parm (s0)         1         0.0%         0.0%         4         1	v i Delete
Microsoftaders         7/5         8 KB         0.1%         4           Microsoftaders         0/0         0 KB         0.0%         4	
Image: Sign (S7)         Image: Archive         0/0         0 KB         0.0%         Image: Im	
Imit Spam         0 / 0         0 KB         0.0%         41           hire (ao)         Imit Spam         0 / 0         0 KB         0.0%         41           imit (ao)         Imit Spam         0 / 0         0 KB         0.0%         41           imit (ao)         Imit Spam         0 / 0         0 KB         0.0%         41           imit (ao)         Imit Spam         0 / 0         0 KB         0.0%         41	
Image: Second	
New folder name [Create folder]	
ress book ininistation Infoure out	

Figure 1-1

You can find the Messages/unreads, Space used, Ratio, Empty|Delete and Create folder information here.

#### 2. Monitor Folder List

Click the "Monitor folders", it will display "Inbox", "Archive", "Spam" and "Trash" (Figure 1-2).

Youngzsoft AAMail Server ×						ĺ	- 0 X
🗲 🔿 C 🗋 dbmail.linkp	oc.net:82/monitor.asp?mod=0						☆ 🔄 🗉
🕑 WebMail		1-1-			🍰 admin@dbmail.linkpc.net	2013-08-26	o Logout
Receive			🕂 admin@dbmail	linkpc.net Monitor mails			
🔍 Mail search		Summary: 7 m	nessage(s) / 5 unread(s), 8 H	E / 2,048 MB,	0.1%		
Mail folders	Monitor folder	Messages/unreads	Space used	R	atio	Empty   De	lete
Honitor folders	🖴 Inbox	7/5	8 KB		0.1%	41	
Inbox (5/7)	Trchive Archive	0/0	0 KB		0.0%	41	
Archive (0/0)	Spam	0/0	0 KB		0.0%	41	
Spam (0/0)	Trash	0/0	0 KB		0.0%	41	
Trash (0/0)			🛅 New folder name	[Create folder]			
Network disk							
Address book							
administration							
X Configure							
Logout							

Figure 1-2

#### 3. Read the Monitored Mail

Click the "Inbox", it will show the Sender, recipients, <u>Direction</u> | <u>Subject</u>, Date and other information on the right side of the form. Click the mail subject (such as "test 1"), you can read the monitored mail then (Figure 1-3).

VebMa	nil			1		🖉 admin@idhmail.linknr.net 2013-08-26	alo
eive						Men Manufaldes Internet Anna anna an Ab ( A search an Ab ( A search an Ab ( Ab ))	
ipose	I Sele	et All X D	elete 🛛 Dro	ip forever 🛛 🕅 Ma	ark as read	Your folder indox has 3 message(s) / 2 unread(s)	
folders	Status	Account	Sender	recipients		Direction   Subject Date?	Size
tor search		Yang	Yang	Postmaster	test1	2013-08-21 10:44	
tor folders		Postma	Yang	Postmaster	↓ test1	2013-08-21 10:44	
07 (2)2)		Administ	Youngzsoft	admin@dbma	. Ltest	2013-08-20 11:00	
ON (2/5)							
hive (0/0) am (0/0) sh (3/4) ork disk	Sele	nct All X D	elete 🛛 Dro	p forever 🔛 Ma	ark as unread	J Constant of the second secon	
hive (0/0) am (0/0) ish (3/4) rork disk ess book inistration	Sele	ect All X D	elete <table-cell> Dro</table-cell>	p forever 🔛 Ma	ark as unread	S S Nove to Archive First a Previous a Next a Last () Jump // 1 () [01-03]	
ox (2/9) hive (0/0) am (0/0) ish (3/4) vork disk ess book inistration īgure	E Sele	ect All X D	elete 😫 Dro	ip forever 🖂 Ma	ark as unread	S Previous Next N Last @ Jump // 1 @ [01-03]	
ox (2/9) hive (0/0) am (0/0) ish (3/4) rork disk ess book inistration īgure put	Sele	ect All X D	elete 윕 Dro	p forever 🔛 Ma	ark as unread	s Previous > Next > Last @ Jump //1 @@ [01-03]	
w (ar or hhve (oro) am (oro) ish (ar4) rork disk ess book inistration figure put	Sele	et All X D	elete 🛛 Dro	p forever 🔛 Ma	ark as unread	d ● Move to Archive ■ First ▲ Previous ▶ Next ★ Last ④ Jump // 1 Gen [01-03]	
va (2-3) hive (0-0) am (0-0) sish (2-4) vork disk ess book inistration figure but	Sele	ect All X D	elete 🔀 Dro	p forever 🔛 Ma	ark as unread	d Previous > Next > Last @ Jump / 1 @ [01-03]	
w (2/3) hive (0/0) sh (2/4) vork disk ess book inistration Tgure uut	E Sele	ect All X D	elete 🔀 Dro	h forever ₩ Ma	ark as unread	S Previous Next M Last @ Jump // 1 66 [01-03]	
hive (oro) hive (oro) sh (a/4) vork disk ess book inistration Tgure	Sele	ect All X D	elete 😮 Dro	p forever 🔛 Ma	ark as unread	s Previous k Next k Last @Jump //1 Gen [01-03]	

Figure 1-3

According to the above method, you can also read the mails in "Archive", "Spam" and "Trash".

#### 4. Search Monitored Mail

Search the monitored mail according to the conditions (Figure 1-4).

🕑 Youngzsoft AAMail Server 🗙 💽				
← → C 🗋 dbmail.linkpc.net:82/monitorsearch.a	sp			☆ 🔄 🔳
<b>WebMail</b>			🍰 admin@dbmail.linkpc.net 2013-08-26	o Logout
Receive     Compose     Mail Goard     Mail Goard     Montor search     Mail Goard     Montor folders     Montor folders	Monifored account(s): Outgoing/incoming option: Sender includes: Mail reoipients include: Mail subject includes Atlachment name includes: Mail date between:	Search monitor mails		

Figure 1-4

Monitored account(s): Select the monitored account(s).

**Outgoing/incoming option:** There are three options (all monitored emails, only outgoing mails and only incoming mails).

Search folder: Select the mailbox in the monitor folders list.

Sender includes: Search the typed keywords in sender.

Mail Subject includes/Full text search: Search the typed keywords in recipient.

Title contains/email text search: Select the search mode.

Attachment name includes: Search the typed keywords in the attachment name.

Mail date between: Select the start date and end date of the monitored mail.

## **10.7Webmail Network Disk**

Webmail provides a very convenient file and data sharing network disk function. After <u>logged in Webmail</u>, you can upload one or multiple files which you needed to the mail server, copy the download link of the shared file, and then share it to your colleagues or customers.

It has contained the special authentication information in AAMail's download link, so you can download the file directly by clicking the download link without logging in Webmail and then download the file, which is very convenient and practical. The network disk function is very suitable for large attachments sharing. Meanwhile, it supports Win2003 large attachments download, which avoided the trouble of sending and receiving large mails.

AAMail network disk supports uploading 4 files at one time. You can share the files after uploaded, which means that all domain users can see and download the files. Every user can delete his or her uploaded files, while the administrator has the rights to delete all the shared files.

Network Disk Interface (Figure 1-1).

🕑 AAMail Server - Webma 🗙					_ = X
← → C 🗋 192.168.1	1.253:82/netdisk.asp?act=4&fid=WB130816000	000112			☆ 🔄 🗉
🕑 WebMail				🍰 admin@test.com 2013-08-16 🛛 👩 Lo	gout English 💌
Compose Compo	Select All & Convisientent links		Upload Reset		
Spam (14/16)	File	Size	Operation	Uploader	Time
Network disk	index.php	🔒 10.1 K	🐚 Copy link 🚙 Set public 🗙 Delete	admin@test.com	2013-07-31 11:43:40
Address book	AAMail.pdf	🔒 71.8 K	🛅 Copy link 🚙 Set public 🗙 Delete	admin@test.com	2013-08-16 16:04:39
<ul> <li>Administration</li> <li>Account</li> <li>Account</li> <li>Configure</li> <li>Configure</li> <li>Logout</li> </ul>					

Figure 1-1

Choose File: Select a file to upload.

Upload: Click to upload files, it supports uploading four files at most at one time.

Copy link: Copy the selected one or multiple files' download links.

Set public: Let all the local domain accounts see and download the files.

**Delete:** Delete the file permanently (The administrator has the rights to delete all the shared files).

#### Turn on or turn off the network disk

The Webmail network disk function is turned on in the default settings, and the parameters of "[Setup] NetdiskEnable = 1" will not be displayed, which means allowing all accounts to use the network disk function.

If you want to turn off the network disk function, then you can add the parameters of "NetdiskEnable = 0" under "[Setup]", which means prohibiting all accounts to use the network disk function.

## **10.8Webmail Address Book Function**

#### 1. Address Book

In the Webmail interface, click the "Address book", it will show the "Address Book List" on the right side of the form (Figure 1-1).

AAMail Server - Webma							
VebMail		1				admin@test.com 2013-08-16	🛛 🐂 =
Receive Compose Mail search	🔲 Salact áll 🕊 Dalata 📲	Add prévries and Add public		Address book	र Reset	- Select book All contacts	
Mail folders	Name		Email	Type	Telephone	Company / Department	
Sent (0/1)	vanopan~	vangpan@v.com		Unknown			
Centr(U/I)	everyone	everyone@test.com		Domain group			
Craits (0/0)	<b>2</b> 1	a 1@test.com		Domain user			
ravonte (0/0)		10@test.com		Domain user			
Spam (14/16)	2 11	11@test.com		Domain user			
🥁 Trash (0/0)	2 12	12@test.com		Domain user			
Network disk	2 13	13@test.com		Domain user			
Address book	. 14	14@test.com		Domain user			
Section Administration	2	2@test.com		Domain user			
Account	2 3	3@test.com		Domain user			
O Domain	<b>4</b>	4@test.com		Domain user			
No Configure	5	5@test.com		Domain user			
	<b>2</b> 6	☑ 6@test.com		Domain user			
Cogour	2 7	7@test.com		Domain user			
	2.8	≥ 8@test.com		Domain user			
	<b>2</b> 9	9@test.com		Domain user			
	Administrator	admin@test.com		Domain user			
	R Postmaster	postmaster@test.com		Domain user			
	🔲 Select All 🗊 Import 🔶	Export (.bt)	📕 First 🔳 Previous	▶ Next ► Last → Jump [01-18]	/1 G0	Select book All contacts	

Figure 1-1

Search: Search the email address in the address book list.

**Delete:** Delete one or multiple email addresses.

Add private: Create new email address.

Export: Export all email addresses with TXT format.

#### 2. Add Private

Click the "Add private" in the "Address Book" page, and then it will pop up the "Add new contact - Personal contacts" window (Figure 1-2).

Address book x		
WebMail	Sadmin@test.com 2013-08-16	ਨ 🖕 =
Receive     Book       Mail folders     Book       Mail folders     Book       Mail folders     Book       Sent (01)     Email       Contact type:     Contact type:       Favorite (00)     Telephone:       Tash (00)     Favorite (00)       Noble:     Favorite (00)       Sent (1416)     Mobile:       Tash (00)     Company:       Network disk     Department       Address book     Additional email:       Account     Contact address:       Description:     Description:	Add new contact - Personal contacts      Personal contacts      yeachi     yeachi     yeachi     yeachi     008-73136537391      Gobsort      Sin Ja Guo Ji Building 1620 Ren Min Do      Save Gobsok	

Figure 1-2

#### 3. Export Address Book

Click the "Export" button in the "Address Book List" page, and it will export all email addresses with TXT format (Figure 1-3).

addressbook.txt	
<pre>Email, User Name, Department/Company, Mobile, Telephone, Contact Email 10test.com, 1, , , , 10@test.com, 10, , , , 11@test.com, 11, , , , 12@test.com, 12, , , , 13@test.com, 13, , , , 14@test.com, 14, , , , 2@test.com, 2, , , , 3@test.com, 3, , , , 4@test.com, 4, , , ,   5@test.com, 5, , , , 6@test.com, 6, , , , 7@test.com, 8, , , , 9@test.com, 8, , , , 9@test.com, 9, , , , admin@test.com, Administrator, , , , everyone@test.com, everyone, , , , postmaster@test.com, Postmaster, , , , yangpan@y.com, yangpan, , , ,</pre>	
	+

Figure 1-3

The email addresses which are exported here can be imported to Outlook and Foxmail.

# **10.9Webmail Configure Function**

Webmail "Configure" includes Userinfo, Preference, Auto filter, Auto reply, Auto forward, Pop3 remote, Password and Signature functions (Figure 1-1).

🕑 AAMail Server - Webma 🗙 🚺				_ = X
← → C 🗋 192.168.1.253:82	2/setpersonal.asp			☆ 🔄 🖬
🕑 WebMail			🔒 admin@test.com	2013-08-16 O Logout
Receive		Personal information		
A Mail search	Your username:	Administrator		
mail forders	Company:			
Sent (0/1)	Department:			
Drafts (0/0)	Telephone:			
🔶 Favorite (0/0)	Mobile:			
🃋 Spam (14/16)	Fax. Contact email:			
Trash (0/0)	Contact entrail.			
Network disk				
Address book		Save Coback		
Se Configure				
Q Userinfo				
& Preference				
Auto filter				
🙀 Auto reply				
Auto forward				
Pop3 remote				
Signature				
logout				

Figure 1-1

#### 1. Userinfo

Record company, department, telephone, mobile, fax, contact email, contact address (Figure 1-2).

🕑 AAMail Server - Webma 🗙 🚺				
$\leftarrow \rightarrow C$ 192.168.1.253:8	2/setpersonal.asp			र 🔚 🖬
🕑 WebMail			admin@test.com	2013-08-16 🧿 Logout
Compose     Compose     Compose     Compose     Mail folders     Mail	Your usemame Company Department Telephone Mobile Fax Contact email Contact address	Personal information      Administrator      Goback      Save      Goback	2 admin@test.com	2013-08-16 💽 Logout
O Logout				

Figure 1-2

#### 2. Preference

Set the interface after logged in Webmail, including the information of default page after login, mail list of mail folders, subject line of mail list, subject line of search list, preferred address book, address book's contact list, preferred editor and save to sent (Figure 1-3).

webmaii		admin@test.com 2013-08-16 🧿 Logout
Receive	4 Your preference settings	
Q. Mail search	Main interface	
A Mail folders	Default nage after lonin: Mail folder - Summary	
😬 Inbox (9/11)	Beredit page ditor rogin. Indirector Community	
😬 Sent (0/1)	Mail folder	
Drafts (0/0)	Mail list of mail folders: 20 mails per page	
★ Favorite (0/0)	Subject line of mail list. Display content on left space	
📋 Spam (14/16)	Subject line of search list. Enspray content on feit space	
Trash (0/0)	Address book	
Network disk	Preferred address book All contacts	
(iii) Address book	Address book's contact list 20 contacts per page	
Administration	Mail sending	
Configure	Preferred editor: HTML editor	
Series Destanto	Save to Sent. Not autosave sent mails	
Auto filter	Reve Cohestr	
Se Auto reniv	Save	
Auto forward		
Pop3 remote		
Password		
📅 Signature		
C L south		

Figure 1-3

#### 3. Auto Filter

Delete filter rule, add filter rule, enable/disable filter rule (Figure 1-4).

← → C 192.168 WebMai	1.253:82/setmailfilter.asp	1		<b>2</b>	☆ 🖬 =
Receive Compose Mail search Mail folders	🔄 Select All 🗶 Delete 🖷 A	dd filter rule	Mail filter settings Account admin@test.com Query 4	💑 somingresicom 2013-08-10	O Logout
😬 Inbox (9/11) 😬 Sent (0/1)	Filter name	Move	Filter brief content		Status
C Drans (UK) ← Favrite (UK) Spam (14/16) C Trash (UK) ← Tash (UK) C Trash (UK) ← Tash (UK) C Configure C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C		Rule name: Filter keyword: Compare method: Compare content Status: Operation: Forward option:	Mail subject   Includes  Enable this filter rule Action if meet this rule Move it to Allow also forward after filtering Save Coback		

Figure 1-4

**Rule Name:** Customize the rule name.

Filter keyword: Mail subject, mail sender, mail recipients, mail header, mail content and has attachment.

Compare method: Includes and equals to.

Status: Whether to enable this filter rule.

**Operation:** Move it to, drop it forever, forward it to with copy left and forward it to without copy left.

Forward option: Whether to allow auto forward after filtering.

#### 4. Auto Reply

Select the begin date and finish date of auto reply. And select the "Enable auto reply" check box to enable the "Enable auto reply" function (uncheck to disable auto reply function). Input the content for auto reply in the edit box, and then click the "Save" button to complete the settings of auto reply function (Figure 1-5).

🕑 WebMail		admin@test.com 2013-08-16	👩 Logout
Receive	🙀 Auto reply settings		
	Begin date: 2013 v / 01 v / 01 v (rearmonthiday) Finish date: 2020 v / 01 v / 01 v (rearmonthiday) Enable autoreply  Save Coback		

Figure 1-5

#### 5. Auto Forward

Settings Page of Auto Forward (Figure 1-6).

		AAMail Server - Webma 🗙 📃
ू 🕈 🤿 🖸 📋 192.168.1.253:82/setautoforward.asp	asp 🗠 🔂	→ C 192.168.1.253:82/setautoforward.asp
WebMail	🔏 admin@test.com 2013-08-16 👩 Log	🕑 WebMail
Receive Receive	Auto forward settings	Receive
Compose   Latal search   Spann (14/16)   Tash (00)   Spann (14/16)   Tash (00)   Spann (14/16)   Potence   Latal search   Latal search   Latal search   Latal search   Latal search   Potence   Latal search   Latal s	Account       admin@test.com       Query       Query <td>Compose     Mail tolders     Mail tolder     Mail tolde</td>	Compose     Mail tolders     Mail tolder     Mail tolde

Figure 1-6

**Enable auto forward:** Select to enable the "Enable auto forward" function, uncheck to disable this function.

**Leave copy after forwarding:** Whether to leave a copy of the email after forwarding. **Forward address:** Input the email address (such as "94371232@qq.com" and "1@test.com"), and separate the two addresses with a "semicolon (;)".

#### 6. Pop3 Remote

You can set one or multiple remote mailbox accounts, and AAMail can collect different accounts' all mails (Figure 1-7). For details, please refer to the "<u>Remote Receiving Mails</u>".

<ul> <li>Ø AAMail Server - Webmax</li> <li>← → C</li> <li>↑ 192,168,1,2</li> </ul>	53:82/setpop3remote.asp					
🕑 WebMail					🍰 admin@test.com 2013-08-16	O Logout
Receive	🔄 Select All 💢 Delete 🖷 New :	account		📽 Remote POP3 account settings		
A Mail folders	Email ad	dress	Status	POP3		SMTP
Inbox (9/11)	1779896493@qq.com		~	pop.qq.com:110 (1779896493@qq.com)		
😬 Sent (0/1)	1@test.com		<ul> <li></li> </ul>	192.168.1.253:110 (1@test.com)		
Favorite (U0)     Span (14/6)     Span (14/6)     Tash (00)     Hetwork disk     Administration     Configure     Logout		Email addre POP3 server addre POP3 per server addre POP3 passwo SMTP server addre SMTP server addre SMTP server addre SMTP server addre	ss:	seve a copy on POP3 server (days) mable this Pop3 account Sine € Coback		

Figure 1-7

#### 7. Password

You can reset the account password and questions (when you forgot the password, you can reset it by inputting the questions and answers you once set) (Figure 1-8).

🕑 WebMail		🤱 admin@test.com 2013-08-16 🧿 Lo
Receive	🔒 Change password settings	
Mail search Formats (00) Search (00) Search (00) Mail Search (00) M	Old password. New password. Confirm new password. Question to reset password. Your answer for his guestion. Confirm the answer of mange. Current password. Save Coback	•)

Figure 1-8

#### 8. Signature

When you write an email, it will add the "auto signature" content automatically. The settings interface of the auto signature is as follows (Figure 1-9).

AAMail Server - Webma	×						
← → C 🗋 192.168.	1.253:82/setsignature.asp						☆ 🖬 🔳
🕑 WebMai						🍰 admin@test.com 2013-0	8-16 👩 Logout
Receive	🥅 Select All 🗶 Delete 🔶 Add	new signature	A 🐙	luto signature settings			
All search	Signature name	Default			Signature brief content		
😬 Inbox (9/11)							
Sent (UP) (2) Drafts (UR) (2) Drafts (UR) (2) Sparn (14/16) (2) Trafts (UR) (2) Trafts (UR) (2) Address book (2) Address book (3) Address book (4)	Sign	ature name:	t this signature into every m	hall (as default signature)			

Figure 1-9

You can add multiple "auto signatures", but only one can be set as the default signature.

Webmail configure function makes it easier to use Webmail, and it is more humanized. Meanwhile, it reduced the workloads of the administrator (non-administrator can set the mail filter rules, auto reply, auto forward, Pop3 remote and map binding etc.).

## 10.10 Install Windows IIS 6.0

#### 1. Windows IIS

IIS (Internet Information Services) is a kind of Web service component, including Web server, FTP server, NNTP server and SMTP server, and it is respectively used for web browser, file transfer, news services and mail sending etc., which makes it very easy to publish information in the network (including the Internet and LAN).

The related IIS with Windows operating system

IIS: Windows

IIS 5.0: Windows 2000 and Windows XP

(IIS5.0installationpackagedownloadlink:http://www.dbmailserver.com/download/iisxpcn.zip)

IIS 6.0: Windows Server 2003 (IIS 6.0 installation package download link: <u>http://www.dbmailserver.com/download/iis2003cn.zip</u>)

IIS 7.0: Windows Server 2008 and Windows 7. For details, please refer to "Install IIS 7".

#### 2. Install Windows IIS

We will take install IIS 6.0 in Windows 2003 environment as an example. Before installing IIS 6.0, you have to prepare the installation files of IIS 6.0. You can download the IIS 6.0 installation package from the Internet, and read from the Windows 2003 operating system CD-ROM as well.

The specific steps are as follows.

- 1) Prepare the installation files of IIS 6.0 (You can download "IIS 6.0" from the Internet).
- 2) Go to "Control Panel" and click the "Add or Remove Programs".
- In the pop up "Add or Remove Programs" dialog box, click the "Add/Remove Windows Components" (Figure 1-1).

👸 Add or Rer	nove Programs		<u> </u>
5	Currently installed programs:	Sort by: Name	•
C <u>h</u> ange or Remove	🍑 AAMail Server 5.0	Size	24,27MB
Programs	Click here for support information.	Used	rarely
5	To remove this program from your computer, click Remove.	Last Used On (	13/03/2002 Remove
Add <u>N</u> ew Programs	🔀 CCBoot v3.0		
	🤣 DAEMON Tools	Size	0,61MB
	n Microsoft English Query	Size	7,47MB
Add/Remove Windows	Microsoft SQL Server 2000 (YANG)	Size	80,35MB
Components	👘 Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine	Size	64,49MB
	👸 Microsoft Windows Simplified Chinese User Interface Pack	Size	354,00MB
	🔞 Remote Administration Tools	Size	4,63MB
	E VMware Tools	Size	11,90MB
		Size	80,12MB

Figure 1-1

4) In the pop up "Windows Components Wizard" dialog box, select the "Application Server" check box, and then click the "Details..." button (Figure 1-2).

ndows Components Wizard	
Windows Components You can add or remove components of Windows	
To add or remove a component, click the checkt part of the component will be installed. To see w Details.	pox. A shaded box means that only hat's included in a component, click
<u>C</u> omponents:	
🔲 📻 Accessories and Utilities	4.5 MB 🔺
🗹 📑 Application Server	24.6 MB
🔲 📴 Certificate Services	1.4 MB
🗆 🛄 E-mail Services	1.1 MB
Fax Services	22.0 MB 🗾
Description: Includes ASP.NET, Internet Informa Application Server Console.	ation Services (IIS), and the
Total disk space required: 2.9 MB	Details
Space available on disk: 2428.5 MB	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> e	ext > Cancel Help

Figure 1-2

5) In the pop up "Application Server" dialog box, select the following check boxes in the red frames, and then double click the "Internet Information Services (IIS)" (Figure 1-3).

Application Server	×	
To add or remove a component, click the check box. A shaded of the component will be installed. To see what's included in a co	box means that only part omponent, click Details.	
Sub <u>c</u> omponents of Application Server:		
🗹 📸 Application Server Console	0.0 MB 👝	
🗆 🍓 ASP.NET	0.0 MB	
🗹 👰 Enable network COM+ access	0.0 MB	
Enable network DTC access	0.0 MB	
🗹 😋 Internet Information Services (IIS) 🛛 18.1 MB		
🔲 🚅 Message Queuing	6.5 MB	
	<b>v</b>	
Description: IIS Includes Web, FTP, SMTP, and NNTP suppo for FrontPage Server Extensions and Active Serve	rt, along with support er Pages (ASP).	
Total disk space required: 2.9 MB	Details	
Space available on disk: 2428.5 MB		
0	K Cancel	

Figure 1-3

6) In the pop up "Internet Information Services (IIS)" dialog box, select the following check boxes in the red frames, and then double click "World Wide Web Service" (Figure 1-4). NOTE: Do not select the "SMTP Service" check box.

Internet Info	rmation Servi	ces (IIS)		×
To add or ren of the compo	nove a compone nent will be insta	nt, click the check I lied. To see what's i	box. A shaded box means that included in a component, click	t only part t Details.
	nis of miemer m	Tormation Services (	<u></u>	
- Q Front	Page 2002 Servi	er Extensions	5.	імв 🗖
🗹 🚡 Interr	net Information S	ervices Manager	1.3	3 MB
🗌 🍏 Interr	net Printing		0.1	о мв 🔤
🗌 🗆 🎯 NNTI	P Service		1.:	2 MB
🔲 📰 SMT	P Service		1.3	3 MB
🗹 矣 Work	d Wide Web Ser	vice	8.	ОМВ
				<b>_</b>
Description:	A core compor Web clients on	ent of IIS that uses a TCP/IP network.	HTTP to exchange informatio	n with
Total disk sp	ace required:	2.9 MB	D	ataile
Space availa	ble on disk:	2428.5 MB		Stans
			ОК С	ancel

Figure 1-4

 In the pop up "World Wide Web Service" dialog box, select "Active Server Pages" and "World Wide Web Service" check boxes, and then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-5).

World Wide Web Service	×	
To add or remove a component, click the check box. A shaded box means of the component will be installed. To see what's included in a component,	s that only part click Details.	
Subcomponents of World Wide Web Service:		
🗹 🔊 Active Server Pages	0.0 MB 🔺	
🔲 🔊 Internet Data Connector	0.0 MB	
🗹 📴 Remote Administration (HTML)	5.7 MB	
Remote Desktop Web Connection 0.4 MB		
Server Side Includes 0.0 MB		
🔲 🔊 WebDAV Publishing	0.0 MB 🚽	
🗹 🙈 World Wide Web Service	1.9 MB 💌	
Description: Allow ASP files. Active Server Pages is always installed.		
Total disk space required: 2.9 MB	Details	
Space available on disk: 2428.5 MB	<u>F</u> erminent	
ОК	Cancel	

Figure 1-5

8) Keep click the "OK" button till the "Widows Components Wizard" dialog box, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-6).

Windows Components Wizard	×
Windows Components You can add or remove components of Windows.	<b>E</b>
To add or remove a component, click the checkbox. A shade part of the component will be installed. To see what's included Details.	ed box means that only d in a component, click
<u>C</u> omponents:	
Accessories and Utilities	4.5 MB 🔺
🗹 🕞 Application Server	24.6 MB
🔲 📴 Certificate Services	1.4 MB
🗆 🛄 E-mail Services	1.1 MB
🗆 🚳 Eax Services	22.0 MR 🗾
Description: Includes ASP.NET, Internet Information Services Application Server Console.	s (IIS), and the
Total disk space required: 2.9 MB	Details
Space available on disk: 2428.5 MB	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel Help

Figure 1-6

9) In the pop up "Files Needed" dialog box, click the "Browse..." button, select the file of installing IIS, and then click the "OK" button (Note that during the installation processes, it will repeatedly pop up the "Files Needed" dialog box, you only need to select the path to save the file) (Figure 1-7).

Configuring Components Setup is making the configuration changes you requested.
Files Needed
Some files on Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition CD-ROM are needed. Cancel Insert Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition CD-ROM into the drive selected below, and then click
OK. <u>C</u> opy files from: D:\1386 Browse
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <b>Cancel</b> Help

Figure 1-7

10) Click the "Finish" button to complete the installation of IIS6.0 (Figure 1-8).



#### Figure 1-8

11) After the installation is complete, click the "Start" button, select "Administrative Tools", and then click "Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager", you can open the Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager. Note: Click the "Web Service Extensions", and on the right side of the form, allow the "Active Server Pages" services (Figure 1-9).

🐌 Internet			_ 🗆 ×
🐚 File Action View Window	v <u>H</u> elp		_ Ð ×
	8 💂 🕨 ■ ॥		
🍋 Internet 信息服务 ⊡~ 🚽 WIN2003-ENT-32 (local con	📁 Web Service Extensions		
🗄 📁 Application Pools		A Web Service Extension	Status
+ 9 Web Sites		🍸 All Unknown ISAPI Extensions	Prohibited
	Allow	All Unknown CGI Extensions	Prohihited
	Prohibit	Active Server Pages	Allowed
	Droportion	Internet Data Connector	Prohibited
	Properties	Server Side Includes	Prohibited
		WEDDAV	Pronibited
	Tasks		
		-	
	Add a new Web service extension		
	Allow all Web service extensions for a		
	specific application		
	Prohibit all Web service extensions		
	@ Open Help		
		<b>ا</b>	•
•	Extended Standard		

Figure 1-9

If you missed to select a component during the installation processes, you can install the component by following the above steps. During the processes of installing the component, please do not select the "SMTP Service" check box. If you installed the "SMTP Service" component, it will conflict with the port 25 of AAMail. Under this circumstance, in the "Internet Information Services (IIS)" dialog box, you can uncheck the "SMTP Service" check box, and keep click the "OK" button till the "Widows Components Wizard" dialog box, and then click the "Next" button. Finally, you can uninstall the "SMTP Service" component.

### 10.11 Install Windows IIS 7 Mail Server

1. Install IIS 7 on Win7 Mail Server

IIS 7 was not installed on Windows 2008 (or Windows 7) by default. If you need to install IIS7, then you must reinstall IIS 7 on the operating system.

When you install IIS7, please note that the ASP, ASP.NET functions are not installed by default, please select these functions and install them.

The IIS 7 installation steps are as follows.

- 1) Click "Start" -> "Control Panel" -> "Programs and Features".
- 2) In the pop up "Programs and Features" dialog box, click "Turn Windows features on or off" (Figure 1-1).

Programs and Features				_	
	rograms and Features	🔻 🛃 🛛 Search Progra	ams and Features		2
Control Panel Home	Uninstall or char	nge a program			
View installed updates	To uninstall a progr or Repair.	am, select it from the list and	then click Uninstall,	Change,	
	Organize 🔻				?
	Name A		▼ Publisher		
	VMware Tools		VMware, Inc.		
	•				Þ
	Currently 1 program	/ installed programs Total s ns installed	ze: 37.7 MB		

Figure 1-1

3) In the pop up "Server Manager" dialog box, click the "Roles" node, and then click the "Add Roles" (Figure 1-2).

Server Manager		
File Action View Help		
🗇 🔿 💆 📅 👔		
Server Manager (WIN2008R2CN)	Roles           View the health of the roles installed on your serv           Roles Summary	er and add or remove roles and features.
	(a) Roles: 0 of 17 installed	Add Roles
	Last Refresh: Today at 6:23 PM Configure refresh	
	Contraction roday actives Phill Contigure remean	
]		j

Figure 1-2

- 4) In the pop up "Before You Begin" dialog box, click the "Next" button.
- 5) In the pop up "Select Server Roles" dialog box, select the "Web Server (IIS)" check box, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-3).

Add Roles Wizard		×
Select Server Ro	les	
Before You Begin Server Roles Web Server (IIS) Role Services Confirmation Progress Results	Select one or more roles to install on this server.         Roles:	Description: Web Server (IIS) provides a reliable, manageable, and scalable Web application infrastructure.
	< Previous Next .	

Figure 1-3

- 6) In the pop up "Web Server (IIS)" dialog box, click the "Next" button.
- 7) In the pop up "Select Role Services" dialog box, select the check boxes in the red frames (Figure 1-4) and (Figure 1-5), and then click the "Next" button. (The check boxes in red frames must be selected).

Add Roles Wizard		×
Select Role Services		
Before You Begin Sele Server Roles Role Web Server (IIS) Role Services Confirmation Progress Results More	ect the role services to install for Web Server (IIS): a services: Web Server Gommon HITP Features Static Content Default Document Directory Browsing HITP Pedirection WebDAV Publishing Application Development AsP.NET NET Extensibility GGI ISAPI Extensions ISAPI Filters Server Side Includes Health and Diagnostics HITP Logging Logging Tools Request Monitor Tracina re about role services	Description:         Active Server Pages (ASP) provides a server side scripting environment for building Web sites and Web applications. Offering improved performance over CGI scripts, ASP provides IIS with native support for both VBScript and JScript. Use ASP if you have existing applications that require ASP support. For new development, consider using ASP.NET.         > Install       Cancel

Figure 1-4



Figure 1-5

8) In the pop up "Confirm Installation Selections" dialog box, click the "Install" button (Figure 1-6).



Figure 1-6

- 9) Wait for installation.
- 10) After installation is complete, click the "Close" button (Figure 1-7).



Figure 1-7

2. How to Open IIS 7

Click "Start" -> "Administrative Tools" -> "Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager". Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager interface (Figure 1-8).

Hinternet Information Services (II	S) Manager	7					_ 🗆 🗵
(3) (3) NIN2008R2CN ↓	Sites 🕨 🛛	Default Web Site 🔸					😰 🖂 🟠 I 🕡 🗸
File View Help							
Connections		Default Web	Site Hom	e		Actions	
	Filter:		▼ ∰ Go 🔽	Show All		Edit Permiss	ions
Application Pools	115				×	Edit Site	
🕂 🅙 Default Web Site			Ð	ø		Basic Setting	gs
	ASP	Authentication	Compression	Default Document		View Applica View Virtual	ations Directories
		404	2			Manage Web	Site 🔿
	Director Browsin	ry Error Pages	Handler Mappings	HTTP Respo		<ul><li>Restart</li><li>Start</li></ul>	
	n		<b></b>			Stop	
	Logging	g MIME Types	Modules	Output		Browse *:80	eb Site D (http)
		٥		Caching		Advanced S	ettings
	Reques	st SSL Settings				Configure	
	Filterin	g				🕑 Help	
•	Feature	s View / Content	View			Online Help	
Ready							<b>1</b> .:

Figure 1-8

# 10.12 Notes when Install Mail Server on Windows 64bit

Because the 64bit operating system does not support Microsoft OLE DB Provider for Jet driver and connecting with the earlier Microsoft Access Driver (\*. Mdb), the Microsoft OLE DB Provider for Jet which is used for Access and Excel database will not be available on 64bit (The difference between 32bit and 64bit mail server).

In Windows 64bit OS, when using IIS to test the ASP websites, you will find the database failed message (Figure 1-1).

Database failed!				
Function:	ConnectOpen()			
Error Number:	3706			
Error Description	Provider cannot be found. It may not be properly installed.			
Information:	Provider=Microsoft.Jet.OLEDB.4.0;Data/Source=E:\AAMai/\data\mai/\accessldap.mdb;			



Provider=Microsoft.Jet.OLEDB.4.0; Data Source=E:\AAMail\data\mail\access|dap.mdb, it will return "3706" error value when you use this method.

"Driver=Microsoft Access Driver (\*. Mdb); DBQ=" & Server.MapPath (db), it will return "- 2147467259" error value when you use this method.
To solve these problems, you must set the IIS environment as 32bit. If the version of IIS is different, then the solution is different either. Now, we will illustrate the <u>IIS6</u> and <u>IIS7</u> solutions below.

#### Access + IIS6

1) In the command line, type

cscript.exe%SYSTEMDRIVE

%\inetpub\adminscripts\adsutil.vbsSETW3SVC/AppPools/Enable32bitAppOnWin64 1

2) Register NET FrameWorks again.

% SYSTEMROOT%\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v2.0.50727\aspnet\_regiis.exe-i

 After finished, in IIS, you will see the 32bit asp.net, and then you need to set it as allow. Note: This operation will cause all the sites in the entire IIS to run in 32bit compatibility mode.

#### Access + IIS7 (enable 32bit mode)

If you are using the Access database on Windows 64bit OS, and you need to use Webmail as well, then you need to enable 32bit Application Mode in IIS. The steps are as follows.

1) After entered into IIS, click the "Application Pools", on the right side of the form, click

"Set Application Pool Defaults..." (Figure 1-2).



Figure 1-2

2) It will pop up "Application Pool Defaults" dialog box, click the "Enable 32-bit Applications" combo box, and select "True", then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-3).

Pin	ication Pool Defaults	<u>? ×</u>
Ξ	(General)	
	.NET Framework Version	v2.0
	Enable 32-Bit Applications	True 🗾
	Managed Pipeline Mode	Integrated
	Queue Length	1000
	Start Automatically	True
Ξ	CPU	
	Limit	0
	Limit Action	NoAction
	Limit Interval (minutes)	5
	Processor Affinity Enabled	False
	Processor Affinity Mask	4294967295
Ξ	Process Model	
	Identity	ApplicationPoolIdentity
	Idle Time-out (minutes)	20
	Load User Profile	False
	Maximum Worker Processes	1
	Ping Enabled	True
	Ping Maximum Response Time (second	90
	Ping Period (seconds)	30
	Shutdown Time Limit (seconds)	90
	Startup Time Limit (seconds)	90
Ξ	Process Orphaning	
	Eashlad	Ealoo

Figure 1-3

#### Select "IIS6 Management Compatibility"

AAMail can run on the 64bit Windows OS, please note that on the 64bit Windows you need to install 64bit SQL Server and the SQL Server Management Studio Express. In addition, for Webmail running on the 64bit Windows, please note that

- 1) When installing IIS components, please note to select "IIS6 Management Compatibility".
- 2) When installing IIS components, please note to select "IIS6 Management Compatibility". If selected, AAMail will auto help you configure the Webmail's sites in IIS. Otherwise, you need to create a "mail" application in IIS manually (Figure 1-4).

Sect Role Services         Server Roles         Box Services         Confination         Press         Results         Box Services         Confination         Press         Results           Description       Digits       Market Market Roles           Section Confination       Press       Results           Section Confination       Digits       Authonization       Digits       Digits       Results       Section Confination       Digits       Digits       Market Role Rote       Digits       Results       Section Confination       Digits       Results       Section       Section       Digits	Add Roles Wizard		×
Before You Begin   Server Roles   Web Server (IIS)   Role Services   Confirmation   Progress   Results     Security   Image: Security	Select Role Service	ces	
	Before You Begin Server Roles Web Server (IIS) Role Services Confirmation Progress Results	Select the role services to install for Web Server (IIS):         Role services:         Security         Basic Authentication         Windows Authentication         Digest Authentication         Client Certificate Mapping Authentication         URL Authorization         URL Authorization         Performance         Static Content Compression         Dynamic Content Compression         Dynamic Content Compression         UIS Management Tools         IIS Management Scripts and Tools         Wins Generat Compatibility         IIS 6 Management Console         IIS 6 Management Console         Wins 6 Management Console         Wore about role services	Description: IIS 6 Management Compatibility provides forward compatibility for your applications and scripts that use the two IIS APIs, Admin Base Object (ABO) and Active Directory Service Interface (ADSI). You can use existing IIS 6 scripts to manage the IIS 7 Web server.

Figure 1-4

## 10.13 Master the Remote Account Management

### **Function**

AAMail's Webmail has remote account management function, which brought administrators great benefits. Administrators no longer need to add or modify the account on the server, and they can login Webmail to deal with it.

The difference between "Domain Administration" and "System Administration" is as follows.

Domain Administration: Only can manage a single domain's accounts and groups.

System Administration: Can manage all domains' accounts and groups.

Note: The normal account has no "remote management function".

#### **Remote Account Management**

Login Webmail with "Domain Administration" or "System Administration" identity. After entered into Webmail's main interface, click the "Administration", and then click the "Account", it will pop up the "Domain administration" interface (Figure 1-1).

Youngzsoft AAMail Server	×						
← → C 🗋 dbmail.lir	kpc.net.82/adminmanager.asp						St 🖪 🔳
🕑 WebMail		1	&	admin@dbm	ail.linkpc.ne	1 2013-08	-27 💿 Logout
Receive Compose Mail search	🗐 Select All 🛛 💥 Delete account 🖷 New	2. Domain administration		9	Select dom	ain dbmail	linkpc.net 💌
Monitor search	Account	User name	Number	Used	Volume	Status	Rules
Honitor folders	📃 🧟 everyone@dbmail.linkpc.net	everyone	0	0 KB	(-)	Enabled	Filter Forward
Network disk	🔲 🍰 admin@dbmail.linkpc.net	Administrator	18	28 KB	1024 M	Enabled	Filter Forward
Address book	postmaster@dbmail.linkpc.net	Postmaster	2	3 KB	1024 M	Enabled	Filter Forward
Administration	Yang@dbmail.linkpc.net	Yang	2	3 KB	1024 M	Enabled	Filter Forward
Configure		H First A Previous A Next H Last @ Jump //1 @ (01-04)					
4							

Figure 1-1

In the "Domain administration" interface, we can find all accounts information, such as: **Number:** Displays all existing mails in inbox.

Used: Displays the space which the account has been used.

Volume: Displays the account's maximum space limit.

Status: Displays the current status of the account.

**Filter:** Displays the account's mail filter rules, and the administrator can add <u>mail filter</u> rules for the account.

**Forward:** Displays the account's auto forward rules, and the administrator can add auto forward rules for the account.

#### **New Account**

Click the "New account" in Figure 1-1, and it will pop up the "Add new account" interface (Figure 1-2)

Youngzsoft AAMail Server	×			
← → C 🗋 dbmail.li	nkpc.net:82/adminaccount.asp		☆ 📮	Ξ
Kecelve		🤱 Add new account		^
Mail search		Basic information		_
Monitor search	Account Password:	domail.linkpc.net		
Address book	User name: User type:	Normali user		
Administration	Max mailbox size: Account alias:	1024 🗷 Limited (M)		
Configure		Permission		
	Allow outgoing: Allow incoming:	Refer to domain  Refer to domain		=
		I Allow this user login Webmail.         Allow this use change its password via Webmail.         I Allow set modify map account settings.         I Allow user modify Pop3 remote settings.		
		More rules		
		Display this account in Public address book.		
		More information		_
	Company: Department:			
	Telephone: Mobile:			
	Fax: Contact email:			
	Description:			
		Map account settings		-

Figure 1-2

In the "Add new account" interface, you can add the "Basic information", "More information" for the account. Also, you can set the account's sending and receiving "Permission" and "Map account settings" etc.

### **Delete Account**

In the "Domain administration" interface, select the "Account" check box, and click the "Delete account", then the selected account will be deleted (Figure 1-3).

Youngzsoft AAMail Server ×						- • ×
← → C 🗋 dbmail.link	pc.net:82/adminmanager.asp					☆ 🖻 🗉
🕑 WebMail		-+	&	admin@dbmail.link	oc.net 2013-0	8-27 Ø Logout
Compose	🔄 Select All 🗶 <u>Delete account</u> 🌵 Nev	2 Domain administration		🔗 Selec	t domain dbma	il.linkpc.net
Monitor search	Account	User name	Number	Used Volu	me Status	Rules
🕖 Monitor folders	🔲 🙎 everyone@dbmail.linkpc.net	everyone	0	0 KB (-	Enabled	Filter Forward
Network disk	🔲 🎎 admin@dbmail.linkpc.net	Administrator	18	28 KB 102	M Enabled	Filter Forward
Address book	postmaster@dbmail.linkpc.net	Postmaster	2	3 KB 102	M Enabled	Filter Forward
Section 24 Administration	🔽 🎎 Yang@dbmail.linkpc.net	Yang	2	3 KB 102	M Enabled	Filter Forward
Configure		[01-04]				

Figure 1-3

### **Modify Account**

In the "Domain administration" interface, click one account, then it will pop up the "Modify account" interface (The parameters in the "Modify account" interface are the same as the "New account" interface). You can modify the relevant parameters according to your own needs.

Click the "Filter" in the "Domain administration" interface, and then you can set the mail filter rules for the account.

Click the "Forward" in the "Domain administration" interface, and then you can set the auto forward rules for the account.

# 11 Webmail FAQs

# 11.1Uncheck the "Show Friendly HTTP Error

## Messages" Check Box in IE

If there is error when visiting Webmail, you can open IE browser, and click "Tools -> Internet Options -> Advanced" to see whether the "Show friendly HTTP error messages" checkbox is unchecked. If not, please uncheck it (Figure 1-1).

General	Security	Privacy	Content	Connections	Programs	Advanced
Setting	s					
•	Enable Enable Enable Enable Force Notify Reuse Show He Note Net Note Net Note Net Net Net Net Net Net Net Net Net N	e page tra e Suggeste e third-pare e visual st e websites offscreen when dou windows friendly H line links ways over ever line AutoC	nsitions* ed Sites ty browse yles on but to use the compositir wnloads co for launch TIP error r	r extensions ttons and contr e search pane ag even under mplete ing shortcuts (n nessages)	ols in webpa Terminal Ser when tabbed	lges ver*
*Ta	kes effect a	after you	restart Int	ernet Explorer Restore	advanced s	ettings
Reset I Rese cond	Internet Ex ets Internet lition. should only	plorer set t Explorer use this i	tings 's settings f your brou	to their default wser is in an un	Res	et

Figure 1-1

After that, the specific error messages will be displayed, which will help you to analyze

the problem then to solve it.

## 11.2Insert Webmail Login Box on Website

If you want to display AAMail's <u>Webmail</u> login interface on your company's home page, then you can insert a form on the web page, enter the user name and password to login Webmail and then you can send and receive mails normally.

<form action=http://Webmail address/login.asp method=post> User name: <input name=fm\_strAccount type=text> Password: <input name=fm\_strPassword type=password> <input type=submit> </form>

**Please note that** the "Webmail address" in "<form action=http://Webmail address/login.asp method=post>" must be in conformity with your actual Webmail address (such as "http://mail.test.com/mail/ login.asp").

## 11.3 Methods of Modifying Webmail Title and Logo

#### Modify the Title

- 1) Open the "AAMail Installation Folder -> Web".
- 2) Open "global\_define.asp" file Notepad.
- Modify the "AAMail Server Webmail" in "const IDS\_Title = AAMail Server -Webmail" as you want.

If you are familiar with ASP and HTML, then you can modify more information on your Webmail page, but please note that when you upgrade AAMail, all the old Webmail pages/pictures will be overwritten by the new version, so you need to save the modified pages.

#### Modify Logo

- 1) Open the "AAMail\web\ images" folder.
- 2) In the images folder, you can replace those pictures.

### Webmail login page

login\_logo.gif: The logo of Webmail login interface.

login\_bg.jpg: The background image of Webmail login interface.

#### Webmail Home Page

main\_bg.jpg: The banner of Webmail main interface.

main\_logo.gif: The banner logo of Webmail main interface.

Please note whether the pictures' size and format are the same with the original pictures.

# 11.4 Modify the Webmail Address of Mail Server

#### 1. How to Remove "/mail"

If you don't want to use the Webmail address like "http://mail.yaozhi.com/mail", but still hope to use "http://mail.yaozhi.com", then you only need to change the IIS folder from "c:\Inetpub\wwwroot" to "c:\AAMail\web".

We will introduce how to remove the "/mail" in the environment of Windows 2003 and Windows 2008.

#### 2. Modify the Webmail Address in Windows 2003 Environment

- 1) Click the "Tool -> Go to IIS " to open IIS Manager (Install IIS 6.0).
- 2) Right click the "Default Web Site" and select "Properties" (Figure 1-1).

🐌 Internet			
🐚 Eile Action View Window	• <u>H</u> elp		_8×
← →   € 🖪 🗡 😭 🕼	🗟 😫 💂 🕨 🔳	11	
Internet ■ WIN2003-ENT-32 (local con ■ Application Pools ■ Web Sites ■ Adminis Web Servic Web Servic Browse Start Stop Pause	Name mail iisstart.htm pagerror.gif	Path C:\AAMail\web	Status
New All Tas <u>k</u> s View New <u>Wind</u> Delete Rena <u>m</u> e Refresh Export Lis P <u>r</u> opertie	dow from Here		
Opens property sheet for the curren	t selection.		

Figure 1-1

3) In the pop up "Default Web Site Properties" dialog box, click the "Home Directory" tab, and then click the "Browse..." button (Figure 1-2).

ault web site	Properties		?					
Documents Web Site	Directory Security Performance	HTTP Headers	Custom Errors Home Directory					
The content for this resource should come from:								
C A share located on another computer C A redirection to a URL								
Lo <u>c</u> al path:	c:\inetpub\www	vroot	Browse					
□ Script source access       ✓ Log visits         ✓ Read       ✓ Index this resource         □ Write       □         □ Directory browsing								
Application name: Default Application Remove								
Application nam	e: Default App	plication	Remove					
Application nam Starting point:	e: Default App <default td="" we<=""><td>plication ab Site&gt;</td><td>Remove</td></default>	plication ab Site>	Remove					
Application nam Starting point: Execute permis	e: Default App <default we<br="">sions: Scripts only</default>	plication eb Site>	Remove Configuration					
Application nam Starting point: Execute permis Application poo	e: Default App <default we<br="">sions: Scripts only I: DefaultApp</default>	plication eb Site > Pool	Remove Configuration					
Application na <u>m</u> Starting point: Execute <u>p</u> ermis Applicatio <u>n</u> poo	e: Default App <default we<br="">sions: Scripts only I: DefaultApp</default>	plication eb Site > Pool	Remove Configuration					

Figure 1-2

4) Expand the "AAMail" node and then expand the "web" node (Figure 1-3).

Browse For Folder	? ×
Home Directory	
E C data	
🗀 dump	
🗀 language	
i other	
E citor	
icons	
images	-
Make New Folder OK Can	cel

Figure 1-3

5) Pay attention to check whether the "Application name" has been selected. Click the "Executive permissions" combo box, and select "Scripts and Executables", then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-4).

efault Web Site F	Properti	es		<u>?</u> ×
Documents Web Site	Direc	tory Security	HTTP Headers	Custom Errors
The content for	r this reso	ormance T purce should com	e from:	,
	• A	directory located	d on this computer	
	O A O A	share located or redirection to a !	another computer URL	
Lo <u>c</u> al path:	Cit	AAMail\web		Br <u>o</u> wse
I Scrip <u>t</u> source ▼ <u>R</u> ead □ <u>W</u> rite □ Directory <u>b</u> r Application setti	e access owsing ings		I Log visits ↓ Index this resou	irce
Application nam	e:	Default Applica	tion	Remove
Starting point:	tioner	<default si<="" td="" web=""><td>ite&gt;</td><td>Configuration</td></default>	ite>	Configuration
Application pool	:	DefaultAppPool		Unload
		OK	Cancel A	pply Help

Figure 1-4

After the above steps, you can modify the Webmail address in Windows 2003 environment.

### 3. Modify the Webmail Address in Windows 2008 Environment

1) Open the Windows IIS Manager (<u>Install IIS 7</u>), select the "Default Web Site", and then click the "Basic Settings..." (Figure 1-5).

Internet Information Services (I	IS) Manager		
	Sites 🔸 Default Web Site 🕨		🕶 🖂 🟠 I 🕜 🝷
File View Help			
Connections	Default Web Site I         Filter:       Image: Content View         IIS       AsP       Authentication       Compresentation         AsP       Authentication       Compresentation       Compresentation         Directory       Error Pages       Hand         Eligging       Image       Image         Logging       SSL Settings       Mode         Filtering       SSL Settings       Image         Features View       Image       Content View	Acti	ions Explore Edit Permissions Edit Site Bindings Basic Settings View Applications View Virtual Directories mage Web Site Restart Start Stop Browse Web Site Browse *:80 (http) Advanced Settings Configure Limits Help Online Help
Ready			1.1

Figure 1-5

 Modify the "Physical path" from the original "C:\inetpub\wwwroot" to the AAMail "web" physical directory, such as "C:\AAMail\web". Then click the "OK" button to complete the settings (Figure 1-6).

Edit Site		<u>? ×</u>
Site name: Default Web Site	Application pool: DefaultAppPool	Select
Physical path: C:\AAMail\web		
Connect as Test Settings.		
	ОК	Cancel

Figure 1-6

After the above steps, you can modify the Webmail address in Windows 2008 environment.

# 11.5 How to Reinstall Webmail

It is very easy to reinstall Webmail, but the premise is that whether the "Default Web Site" in IIS is running or not.

The steps are as follows.

- 1) On the menu bar of AAMail main interface, click the "Tool -> Reinstall Webmail".
- 2) In the pop up "Reinstall Webmail" dialog box, click the "Yes" button, then it will install Webmail automatically (Figure 1-1).

Reinstall Webmail	×
Do you need to reinstall Webmail (reset IIS)? (http://yy/mail)	
Webmail name mail 📝 Enable Webmail	

Figure 1-1

You can enable or disable Webmail, and modify Webmail's virtual directory name here. If you can't install Webmail via the above method, please refer to "<u>What If Mail Virtual</u> <u>Directory was Mistakenly Deleted</u>".

Enable Webmail: Whether to enable Webmail.

**Webmail name:** The default Webmail directory name will be "mail". For example, the Webmail address is "http://localhost/mail".

# 11.6HTTP Error 404 - File or Directory Not Found

If you haven't enabled the "Active Server Pages" service in IIS, then it will prompt the error message of "HTTP Error 404 - File or directory not found" (Figure 1-1).





Solution:

Open IIS Manager, click the "Web Service Extensions", and right click the "Active Server Pages", then select "Allow" to start the "ASP" service (Figure 1-2).

🐌 Internet			
🐚 Eile Action View Window	v <u>H</u> elp		_ Ð ×
	2 💂 🕨 ■ ॥		
衛 Internet 信息服务 🚽 WIN2003-ENT-32 (local con	📁 Web Service Extensions		
🕀 💓 Application Pools		A Web Service Extension	Status
Web Sites		🝸 All Unknown ISAPI Extensions	Prohibited
web Service Excension:	Allow	All Unknown CGI Extensions	Prohibited
	Prohibit	Active Server Pages	Allowed
	Deservation	Internet Data Connector	Prohibited
	Properties	Server Side Includes	Prohibited
		S WEDDAV	Prohibited
	Tasks		
	Add a new Web service extension		
	Allow all Web service extensions for a		
	specific application		
	Prohibit all Web service extensions		
	Open Help		
	1	•	•
	Extended Standard		

Figure 1-2

### 11.7What If Mail Virtual Directory was Mistakenly

### Deleted

First, check whether the "Default Web Site" in IIS is running. Then, on the menu bar of AAMail main interface, click the "Tool -> Reinstall Webmail". Finally, try to visit Webmail again and see whether it is normal (For details, please refer to "<u>How to Reinstall</u> <u>Webmail</u>").

If there still does not have the child node of mail under IIS default site (or Default Web Site), then you can manually create one. Right click "Default Web Site" -> "New" -> "Virtual Directory...". In the pop up "Add Virtual Directory" dialog box, click the "Next" button, then enter the alias of "mail", and choose the path "C:\AAMail\web" (AAMail's "web" folder). Click the "OK" button to complete the creation (Figure 1-1). Then try to visit Webmail again.

Add Virtual Directory	<u>? ×</u>
Site name: Default Web Site Path: /	
Alias: mail Example: images	
Physical path: C:\AAMail\web	
Connect as Test Settings	
OK Can	cel

Figure 1-1

## 11.8 Mail Server Database Failed

### Authentication Mode

"Database Failed" means accessing database failed, and one of the most common causes is SQL Server login failed. We recommend that you use the "user name + password" login mode to connect the SQL Server database, because it is simple and effective.

If your database is "Windows integration authentication" without doing any other settings, it will have "Database failed!" problem (Figure 1-1)

🚰 AAMail Server - Webmail - Microsoft Internet Explorer			- D ×
<u>File Edit View Favorites Iools Help</u>			<b>.</b>
🔇 Back 🝷 🕥 👻 😰 🐔 🔎 Search 🛭 😓 Favorites 🜒 Media 🔗 🔯 🚍			
Address 🕘 http://127.0.0.1/mail/		💌 🄁 Go	Links »
Punction: ConnectOpen()         Error Number: -2147217843         Error Description User WIN2003-ENT-32UUSR_WIN         Information: Provider=sqloledb;Data Source=(tr)         Vour account:         Your account:         Your password:         Language:	e failed! 2003-ENT-32' Database Failed! acab, initial Catalog=sqlmail; integrated Security=SSPI; WebMail admin @ Memember it English * Forget password? * Owned by YZSoft, 2002 * Supported by AA Mail Server!		
A Done		Trusted cited	
			11.

Figure 1-1

The steps to modify the "Authentication Mode" from "Windows integration authentication" to "user + password authentication" are as follows.

- Modify the configuration file. For details, please refer to "<u>How to Reset the</u> <u>Database</u>". Please shutdown the mail server before modifying.
- 2) Reset the database. In the "Database settings" dialog box, click the "Authentication" combo box, and select "User + Password authentication" (Figure 1-2).

Don't fo	ire database connection parameters here. orget to click Detect button to test the connection.
Data source	(local)
QL Server service	MSSQLSERVER SQL Server run on remote
Database name	sqlmail C:\DBMail\data\mail\sqlmail.mdf
Authentication	User + Password authentication
User ID	sa Dataat
Password	

Figure 1-2

If you must use "Windows Integration" authentication mode, then you need to do a series of complex settings in IIS (For details, please refer to "<u>Set Windows Integration</u> <u>Authentication Mode</u>").

#### **Firewall and Antivirus Software**

If the server has enabled firewall and antivirus software, it may block the database port, thus, the database connection will be failed.

Solution: Turn off the firewall and antivirus software.

# 11.9Webmail Cannot Switch Language or Jump Page

When you login Webmail in Windows 2003 or Windows 2008, if you click the "Login" button, but it can't jump page or switch language, then you can follow the instructions below.

- 1) Open the IE browser, on the menu bar, click "Tools -> Internet Options".
- 2) In the pop up to "Internet Options" dialog box, click the "Security" tab, and select the "Trusted sites", and then click the "Sites" button (Figure 1-1).

Internet Options
General Security Privacy Content Connections Programs Advanced
Select a zone to view or change security settings.
Internet Local intranet Trusted sites Restricted sites
Trusted sites
This zone contains websites that you trust not to damage your computer or your files. You have websites in this zone.
Security level for this zone
<b>Custom</b> Custom settings. - To change the settings, click Custom level. - To use the recommended settings, click Default level.
Enable Protected Mode (requires restarting Internet Explorer)
Custom level Default level
Reset all zones to default level
OK Cancel Apply

Figure 1-1

3) It will pop up the "Trusted sites" dialog box, in the "Add this web site to the zone" edit box, type "http://127.0.0.1/mail/default.asp", and then click the "Add" button (Figure 1-2).

Trusted sites	<b>—</b> ×
You can add and remove websites from this zor this zone will use the zone's security settings.	ne. All websites in
Add this website to the zone:	
http://127.0.0.1/mail/default.asp	Add
Websites:	
http://www.114a.com	Remove
http://www.cn220.com http://www.gg.com	
Require server verification (https:) for all sites in this	zone
	Close

Figure 1-2

After the above steps, you can visit Webmail on the server normally.

# **11.10 Set Windows Integration Authentication Mode**

### 1. Set "Windows integration authentication" Mode

The method to set "Windows Integration Authentication" mode in Windows 2003 and Windows 2008 environment is different.

#### 2. Setting Method in Windows 2003

If you have chosen the "Windows Integration Authentication" mode for AAMail database (Figure 1-1), something will be wrong when you directly login Webmail, then you need to add the "anonymous access user name" to the SQL Server login list.

Database settings		×
Onfigu Don't fo	re database connection parameters here. rget to click Detect button to test the connection.	
Data source	(local) 🗸	
SQL Server service	MSSQLSERVER   SQL Server run on remote	
Database name	sqlmail D:\AAMail\data\mail\sqlmail.mdf	
Authentication	Windows intergration authentication	
User ID	Sa Detect	
Password		
	OK Cancel	

Figure 1-1

#### How to Find the Anonymous Access User Name?

Open IIS Manager, on the "Web Sites" directory tree, right click "Default Web Site" and select "Properties". Then click the "Directory Security" tab, and then click the "Edit" button. It will pop up the "Authentication Methods" dialog box, and you can find the "anonymous access user name: IUSR\_WIN2003-ENT-32" (Figure 1-2).

A	uthentication Me	thods	×	
	■ Enable anony Use the following	mous access Windows user account for anonymous access:		
	<u>U</u> ser name:	IUSR_WIN2003-ENT-32 Browse		
	Password:	•••••		
	-Authenticated ac	cess		
	For the following authentication methods, user name and password are required when: - anonymous access is disabled, or - access is restricted using NTFS access control lists			
	☑ Integrated Windows authentication			
	Digest auther	tication for Windows domain servers		
	Basic authent	ication (password is sent in clear text)		
	I .NET Passpor	t au <u>t</u> hentication		
	Default <u>d</u> omain	: Select		
	<u>R</u> ealm:	Select		
	0	K Cancel <u>H</u> elp		

Figure 1-2

#### How to Add the Anonymous Access User Name to the SQL Server Login List?

- 1) Open the SQL Server Management Studio Express.
- Expand the "Security" directory => Right click "Logins", and select "New Login..." (Figure 1-3).

🚡 SQL Server Enterprise Manager -	Microsoft	5QL Servers\	SQL Server (	Group\(local) (W	/indows NT)\S 💶 🗙
📸 Eile Action View Tools Window	<u>H</u> elp				_8×
	3   🔆   🏷 🕼 🛙	g 🗖			
<u></u>	Logins 2 Items				
🖻 📲 Microsoft SQL Servers	Name 🛆	Туре	Server A	Default Data	Default Language
GQL Server Group     Goal) (Windows NT)     Goal) (Windows NT)     Goal) (Windows NT)     Goal) Databases     Goal Transformation Ser     Goal Management     Goal Replication     Goal Security		Windows Standard	Permit Permit	master master	Simplified Chinese Simplified Chinese
Inke     View       Inke     View	v from Here				

Figure 1-3

3) In the pop up "SQL Server Login Properties - New Login" dialog box, select the "Windows Authentication" radio button, and then select the "Grant access" radio button, and click the "..." button (Figure 1-4).

SQL Server Login Properties - New Login	x
General Server Roles Database Access	
Authentication	
Do <u>m</u> ain:	
Security access:	
© <u>G</u> rant access	
O Deny access	
SQL Server Authentication	
Password:	
Defaults	
Specify the default language and database for this login.	
Database: master 🔽	
Language: <a></a> <a></a> <a></a>	
OK Cancel Help	

Figure 1-4

4) Select the "anonymous login account (IUSR\_WIN2003-ENT-32)", and click the "Add" button, then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-5).

SQL Server Login Properti	es - New Login 🔀
List Names From: 👘 \\\WI	N2003-ENT-32*
<u>N</u> ames:	
Replicator	Supports file replication in a domain 🛛 🔺
TelnetClients	Members of this group have access to 1
	Users are prevented from making accide
🕵 Administrator	Built-in account for administering the co
🚯 Guest	Built-in account for quest access to the
👷 IUSR_WIN2003-ENT-3	2 (Interne Built-in account for anonymous access
IWAM_WIN2003-ENT- SUPPORT_388945a0 (	32 (Launc Built-in account for Internet Information CN=Micrc This is a vendor's account for the Help 💌
Add	Members <u>S</u> earch
A <u>d</u> d Name:	
ОК	Cancel <u>H</u> elp

Figure 1-5

5) Click the "Database Access" tab, and select "sqlmail", "public", "aa\_owner" check boxes. Then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-6).

SQL Serve	r Login Properties - New Login	×
General	Server Roles Database Access	
	Specify which databases can be accessed by this login.	
~·	Permit Database User	
	🗆 🗊 master	
	🗆 🗊 model	
	🗆 🗊 msdb	
	🗹 🗊 sqlmail 🛛 IUSR_WIN2003-ENT-32	
	🔲 🚺 tempdb	
	, Database roles for 'sqlmail':	
	Permit in Database Role	
	🗹 🕵 public	
	🗹 🕵 db_owner	
	🗆 🕵 db_accessadmin	
	🗆 🕵 db_securityadmin	
	🗆 🕵 db ddladmin 📃 🗾	
	Properties	
	OK Cancel Help	

Figure 1-6

#### 3. Setting Method in Windows 2008

### Set IIS

1) Open IIS, and click the "Application Pools", then right click "DefaultAppPool", and select "Advanced Settings..." (Figure 1-7).



Figure 1-7

 In the pop up "Advanced Settings" dialog box, click the "..." button on the right of "Identity", and then select the "NetworkService", and click the "OK" button (Figure 1-8).

	<u> </u>
Managed Pipeline Mode	Integrated
Managed Pipeline Mode	Defeultéer Deel
Queue Length	
Queue Length	1000
Start Automatically	True
Limit	0
Limit Action	NoAction
Limit Interval (minutes)	5
Processor Affinity Enabled	False
Processor Affinity Mask	4294967295
Process Model	
Identity	NetworkService
Idle Time-out (minutes)	20
Load User Profile	False
Maximum Worker Processes	1
Ping Enabled	True
Ping Maximum Response Time (secon	nd 90
Ping Period (seconds)	30
Shutdown Time Limit (seconds)	90
Shutdown Time Limit (seconds) Startup Time Limit (seconds)	90
Shutdown Time Limit (seconds) Startup Time Limit (seconds) Process Orphaning	90
Shutdown Time Limit (seconds) Startup Time Limit (seconds) Process Orphaning Enabled	90 90 False

Figure 1-8

### Set the Database

- 1) Open the SQL Server Management Studio Express.
- Expand the "Security" directory => Right click "Logins", and select "New Login..." (Figure 1-9).

🚡 SQL Server Enterprise Manager -	Microsoft	5QL Servers\	SQL Server (	Group\(local) (W	/indows NT)\S 💶 🗙
🚡 Eile Action View Tools Window	<u>H</u> elp				_ 8 ×
	3   🔆   🏷 🗊 🛙	3 🖸			
	Logins 2 Items				
E Microsoft SQL Servers	Name A	Туре	Server A	Default Data	Default Language
GOL Server Group     GoL Server Group     GoL (Uindows NT)     GoL Databases     GoL Data Transformation Ser     GoL Management     GoL Management     GoL Security	∰ BUILTIN\Administra… ∑sa	Windows Standard	Permit Permit	master master	Simplified Chinese Simplified Chinese
E       Security         Image: Server New Login       Server New Login         Image: Server New Login       Yiew         Image: Server New Window       New Window         Image: Server New	v from Here				

Figure 1-9

3) In the pop up "SQL Server Login Properties - New Login" dialog box, select the "Windows Authentication" radio button, and then select the "Grant access" radio button, and click the "..." button (Figure 1-10).

SQL Server Login Properties - New Login	×
General Server Roles Database Access	
<u> </u>	
Authentication	-
Do <u>m</u> ain:	
Security access:	
O Deny access	
SQL Server Authentication	
Password:	
Defaults	-
Specify the default language and database for this login.	
Database: master 💌	
Language: <default></default>	
OK Cancel He	lp

Figure 1-10

4) Select the "anonymous login account (IUSR\_WIN2003-ENT-32)", and click the "Add" button, then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-11).

SQL Server Login Properties	s - New Login X
List Names From: 👘 \\\\/IN	2003-ENT-32*
<u>N</u> ames:	
Replicator	Supports file replication in a domain 🛛 🔺
A state of the	Members of this group have access to 1
<b></b>	Users are prevented from making accide
🧕 🧕 🕵 Administrator	Built-in account for administering the co
🚯 Guest	Built-in account for quest access to the
👷 IUSR_WIN2003-ENT-32	(Interne Built-in account for anonymous access
IWAM_WIN2003-ENT-32 SUPPORT_388945a0 (CI	? (Launc Built-in account for Internet Information ! N=Micrc This is a vendor's account for the Help .▼
Add	Members
A <u>d</u> d Name:	
ОК	Cancel <u>H</u> elp

Figure 1-11

5) Click the "Database Access" tab, and select "sqlmail", "public", "aa\_owner" check boxes. Then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-12).

SQL	Serve	r Login Pre	operties - N	lew Login					×
G	eneral	Server Rol	es Databas	se Access					
ſ	2	<u>S</u> pecify w	vhich databa:	ses can be	acces	sed by tł	nis login.		
~		Permit	Database	User					
			master						
			model						
			msdb						
		🗹 🗊	sqlmail	IUSR_WI	N2003	ENT-32			
			tempdb						
		1							
		<u>D</u> atabase	e roles for 'sql	mail':					
		Permit in	Database R	ole				<b></b>	
		🗹 🕵 P	ublic						
		🗹 🕵 d	b_owner						
		🗆 🕵 d	b_accessadr	min					
		🗆 🖸 🕵 d	b_securityad	min				_	
		🗆 🖸 🖸	b ddladmin					-	
							<u>P</u> roper	ties	
				OK	]	Cancel		Help	

Figure 1-12

# 11.11 How to Save Sent Mails into Sent

As we all know, there are two ways to send and receive mails, the first one is to use <u>Webmail</u>, and the second is to use the client software (such as <u>Outlook</u> and <u>Foxmail</u> etc.) to send and receive mails.

Then How to Save Sent Mails by Using These Two Methods?

1. Webmail

When using Webmail to send and receive mails, how to auto save sent mails into "Sent"? Please follow the following instructions.

1) Open the Webmail main interface, then click the "Configure", and click the "Preference" (Figure 1-1).

Odmaillinkpc.net82/setpreference.asp      WebMail      Receive     Gompose     Mails sorch      Mediatesethere			☆ マ C Soogle	<u> </u>
WebMail     Receive     Compose     Mail search     Medicate				
Compose			admin@domail.iinkpc.net _20	013-08-27 🧿 Logout
🔍 Mail search		Your preference settings	-	
Main toutes         Monitor folders         Nonitor folders         National station         Administration         Administration         Preference         Auto filter         Bassword         Image: Logout	Default page after login: Mail list of mail folders: Subject line of mail list Subject line of search list Preferred address book: Address books contact list Preferred editor: Save to Sent	Main interface Wail folder - Sum sy  Mail folder Display makiet only  Display subject only  Alforess book All contacts  20 contacts per page  Mail sending Mail sending Ket autosave sent mails  Save Coback		

Figure 1-1

 It will jump to the "Your preference settings" page, click the "Save to Sent" combo box, and select "Autosave sent mails into Sent ". Finally, click the "Save" button (Figure 1 -2).

Firefox *		• •
Youngzsoft AAMail Server +		
< 🕘 dbmail.linkpc.net:82/setpreference.asp	ি ⊽ ৫ 🚼 ব Google 🔎	☆ 🖸 -
🕑 WebMail	🔒 admin@dbmail.linkpc.net 2013-08-27	o Logout
Receive	4 Your preference settings	
Q Mail search	Main interface	
Monitor search	Mail folder	
Network disk Mail list of mail folders:	20 nails per page 👻	
Address book Subject line of mail list:	Display subject only	
Configure	Address book	
Preferred address book:	All contacts	
Se Auto filter	Mail sending	
Preferred editor:	HTWL editor 🗸	
de Pop3 remote Save to Sent:	Autosave Sant mails into Sant 🗸	
Cogout		

Figure 1-2

After the above steps, login Webmail again. Then your sent mails will be auto saved into "Sent".

### 2. Client Software

When you send and receive mails with client software (such as Outlook and Foxmail), how to auto save sent mails into "Sent"? Please follow the following instructions. Note: When you send and receive mails with client software, if you want the sent mails to

be saved into Webmail's "Sent", then you need to do the above steps.

- 1) Open the "mailserver.ini" config.sys under "AAMail\data" folder.
- 2) Under the "[System]", add a line of "SaveToSentAll = 1" (Figure 1-3).



Figure 1-3

3) Save the settings and then close the Notepad.

# **11.12 How to Modify the Copyright Information**

The Copyright Information on Webmail Login Interface (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

How to modify the "Owned by..." to your own company name, when click the "Owned by...", then it will link to your company web site?

The steps are as follows.

1) On the "Tool" menu of AAMail main interface, click "Settings" (Figure 1-2).

AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)								
Operation Account Tool Settings Help								
🧟 Account 🗇 Group 🌖	Domain 🛛 💮 Service	🔀 Settings	🚖 Purchase	🔀 Shutdowr	1			
Account Status	Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume
🕀 🌖 test.com	🗇 everyone@test.com	everyone		Group	(4)			[-1]
	▲ admin@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	🊨 mimosa@test.com	Mimosa		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
	postmaster@test.com	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	♣ support@test.com	sylvia		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
	•							•
[09:42:44] [Sustem] ) (or = 5.0.2012050	1 ) (in 7/64) Access ) (close	mol						
[17:02:01]-[System] Services: NOT in	stalled, Stopped!	ane:						^
[09:42:44]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2	2, 192.168.1.126, 192.168.10	01.1, 192.168.10	7.1					
								Ψ.
$\lambda$ System $\lambda$ SMTP $\lambda$ POP3 $\lambda$	Remote $\lambda$ Outgoing $\lambda$ Inc	oming /						
Ready Total=5 7=m	imosa@test.com					2013	8-08-24	17:02:01

Figure 1-2

2) In the pop up "Server settings" dialog box, click the "Webmail" tab (Figure 1-3).

Server settings		3
General Account Mail	Network Webmail Logs Advanced	٦
Click for help	<ul> <li>Enable network disk</li> <li>Auto trim long Excel file name for IE.</li> </ul>	
Webmail	http://127.0.0.1/mail	
Company & website	Youngzsoft http://en.aamailsoft.com	
Webmail login	Use account prefix only	
	OK Cancel	

Figure 1-3

- 3) In the "Company & website" edit box, type the "company name" and "website", and then click the "Yes" button.
- 4) You can see your company information since next time you login Webmail. Up to this point, the settings are completed.
Note: Click the "Supported by Youngzsoft AAMail Server!", you can quickly go to AAMail website and find the information you need.

### 11.13 Edited Mails Auto Jumped to Webmail Login

## Interface

**Phenomenon:** After a period of time, the edited mails auto jumped to the Webmail login interface.

**Reasons:** AAMail mail server does not support auto save the "draft" at this moment. You can manually click the "Save" button to save the mail to "Draft".

The default login time of Webmail is 20 minutes, after 20 minutes, it will auto logout.

The login time of Webmail is decided by the Session value of <u>IIS</u>, you can modify the value of the IIS Session to extend and shorten the Webmail login time. For details, please refer to "<u>Solutions for Webmail Auto Logout</u>".

# **11.14 Solutions for Webmail Auto Logout**

The Session object of ASP (Active Server Pages) technology is used to store users' private information.

Session object has a very important property: Timeout is used to set the inactive state time (20 minutes by default) of the session object before the session resources being released. When the time which you set in the Timeout properties is running out, then the session resources will be released. Therefore, the Webmail account will be auto logged out and the session will be ended.

Change the Session object via Timeout properties can avoid the unbounded Session object in the server, which protected the server resources.

If you want the account remains active, then you have to extend the validity of Session.

#### Windows 2003

In Windows 2003 environment, the steps to extend the validity of Session are as follows.

- 1) Click the "Start" button, in the "Run" edit box, type "cmd", and then press "Enter".
- 2) In the pop up "Command Prompt" window, type "iisreset/stop" to stop the IIS Admin Service (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

- 3) Navigate to "C:\WINDOWS\system32\inetsrv", and then open the "MetaBase1.xml" file with Notepad.
- 4) In the opened Notepad, search "AspSessionTimeout" field, modify the value (the default value is "20") (Figure 1-2).

<b>1</b>	1etaB	ase1.xm	il - Notepad	- II X
Eile	Edit	Format	<u>Vi</u> ew <u>H</u> elp	
	<u>E</u> dit	Format	<pre>View Help AspQueueConnectionTestTime="3" AspQueueTimeout="4294967295" AspRequestQueueMax="3000" AspRequestQueueMax="3000" AspScriptEngineCacheMax="250" AspScriptErrorSentToBrowser="TRUE" AspScriptErrorSentToBrowser="TRUE" AspScriptFileCacheSize="500" AspScriptFileCacheSize="500" AspScriptIngeout="90" AspScriptTimeout="90" AspScriptFileCacheSize="500" AuthChangeURL="/iisadmpwd/aexp3.asp" AuthFlags="AuthAnonymous   AuthNTLM" AuthNotifyPwdExpURL="/iisadmpwd/anot3.asp" CGTTimeout="300" CacheISAPI="TRUE" CentralBinaryLoggingEnabled="FALSE" ConnectionTimeout="120" ContentIndexe="TRUE" DefaultDoc="Default.htm,Default.asp,index.htm" DirBrowseFlags="DirBrowseShowDate   DirBrowseShowTime   DirBrowseShowSiz DownlevelAdminInstance="1" HttpErrors="400, *,FILE,C:\WINDOwS\help\iisHelp\common\400.htm</pre>	ne ui
•			405,2,FILE,C:\WINDOWS\neip\iisHeip\common\403-2.htm	

Figure 1-2

Note: Do not set the AspSessionTimeout parameters too large, so as not to influence the account security and OS performance.

5) In the "Command Prompt" window, type "iisreset", and then restart the IIS service.

#### Windows 2008

In Windows 2008 environment, the steps to extend the validity of Session are as follows. Open the IIS Information Services (IIS) Manager.

Expand the "Sites", click the "Default Web Site", and then double click "ASP" (Figure 1-3).



Figure 1-3

Expand the "Session Properties", in the "Time-out" edit box, modify the value (the default value is "20") (Figure 1-4).

📲 Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager						
	Sites   Default Web Site	🖸 🖾 🖾 I 🖉 🔻				
File View Help						
Connections	ASP         Display:       Friendly Names         Behavior       •         Compilation       •         Services       •         Caching Properties       •         Com Plus Properties       •         Session Properties       •         Enable Session State       True         Maximum Sessions       4294967295         New ID On Secure Cor True       •         Time-out       00:20:00	Actions          Apply         Cancel         Help         Online Help				
Configuration: 'localhost' applicationHost.c	onfig , <location path="Default Web Site"></location>	Sec. 1				

Figure 1-4

After the modification is complete, restart IIS.

# 11.15 Mail Server Webmail Login Mode

#### 1. Introduction about the Webmail Login Mode

According to customers' different needs, we provide two kind of Webmail login modes.

The first mode is to list all <u>domain names</u> of AAMail mail server on the <u>login interface</u> (click the "@" combo box, and select the domain name). With this mode, in the "Your account" edit box, you only need to enter the account's prefix (such as "admin") (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

The second mode is not to list domain names of AAMail mail server on the login interface. With this mode, you need to enter the full account name (such as "admin@test.com") (Figure 1-2).



Figure 1-2

2. How to Set Webmail Login Mode

The default login mode of Webmail is to display all the domain names, and the user only needs to enter the account's prefix.

How do we choose Webmail login mode?

The steps are as follows.

1) In the "Tool" menu of AAMail main interface, click "Settings" (Figure 1-3).

🥑 AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)								
Operation Account Tool Settings Help								
🧟 Account 🕤 Group 🌖	Domain 🛛 💮 Service	🔀 Settings	🚖 Purchase	🔀 Shutdowr	1			
Account Status	Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume
⊕	🗇 everyone@test.com	everyone		Group	(4)			[-1]
	🊨 admin@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	🊨 mimosa@test.com	Mimosa		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
	postmaster@test.com	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	Support@test.com	sylvia		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
	•							Þ.
[11:50:43]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome! [12:26:08]-[System] Services: NOT installed, Stopped! [11:50:43]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2, 192.168.1.01.1, 192.168.107.1								
								$\nabla$
$\setminus$ System $\bigwedge$ SMTP $\lambda$ POP3 $\lambda$	Remote $\lambda$ Outgoing $\lambda$ Inc	oming /						
Ready Total=5						201	3-08-26	12:26:08

Figure 1-3

2) It will pop up the "Server settings" dialog box, click the "Webmail" tab, and select the Webmail login mode (Figure 1-4).

Server settings	×				
General Account Mail	Network Webmail Logs Advanced				
Enable network disk     Auto trim long Excel file name for IE.					
Webmail	http://127.0.0.1/mail				
Company & website Youngzsoft www.aamailserver.com					
Webmail login	Use account prefix only				
	Use account prefix only Use full account (with domain)				
	OK Cancel				

Figure 1-4

**Use account prefix only:** When login Webmail, you only need to enter the account's prefix (corresponding to the above Mode A).

Use full account (with domain): When login Webmail, you need to enter the full

account name (corresponding to the above Mode B).

# 11.16 Solution for Mail Server MX/IP Resolved Failed

If there are problems like

1) "cy@vip.163.com: domain [vip.163.com] MX/IP resolved failed"

2) "domain [day.com.cn] MX/IP resolved failed"

But the MX was resolved correctly. Then it may because that the DNS can't find the MX/IP. The solution is as follows.

In the "Local Area Connection" dialog box, modify the DNS address. It can be modified as

8.8.8.8

8.8.4.4

4.2.2.1

4.2.2.2

4.2.2.3

4.2.2.4

4.2.2.5

These are the international stable DNS addresses.

### 11.17 Reasons of Sending Mails Slow with Webmail

Phenomenon: Send mails slow via Webmail, but it is fast with outlook.

We can analyze this problem from the sending processes of Webmail and Outlook.

Outlook sending process: Outlook compose -> Outlook direct encoding -> Outlook send -> AAMail SMTP receive -> AAMail SendMail.

Webmail sending process: Webmail compose -> Webmail save -> Webmail encoding -> AAMail SendMail.

Thus it can be seen that Outlook is faster than Webmail. Because it has to go through an encoding process when using Webmail to send mails, and then the mails could be sent. So the sending speed of Webmail is slow.

# 11.18 Import the Email Addresses to Webmail Address

#### Book

The specific steps to import email addresses to Webmail are as follows.

1) Login Webmail, and click the "Address Book", then click "Import" (Figure 1-1).

Youngzsoft AAMail Serve	r ×		
← → C 🗋 dbmail.	linkpc.net:82/addressbook.asp	)	☆ 🖪 🔳
🕑 WebMail	+		
😤 Receive		a Ac	idress book
📑 Compose		182	Search
🔍 Mail search	🔲 Salact All 🔸 Dalata 🕂 (	Add private	Search
Aail folders	Nome		Tuno
Network disk	Name	Email	туре
Address book	s yangpan~	yangpan@y.com	Unknown
Administration	everyone	everyone@test.com	Domain group
X Configure		2 1@test.com	Domain user
🔟 Logout		≥ 10@test.com	Domain user
		≥ 12@test.com	Domain user
	• 12 • 13		Domain user
			Domain user
		a 2@test.com	Domain user
	<u> </u>	a 3@test.com	Domain user
	4	A@test.com	Domain user
	5	≥ 5@test.com	Domain user
	6	☑ 6@test.com	Domain user
	7	🛛 7@test.com	Domain user
	8	≥ 8@test.com	Domain user
	8 9	🥪 9@test.com	Domain user
	Administrator	admin@test.com	Domain user
	Postmaster	postmaster@test.com	Domain user
	Select All import E	Export (.txt)	xt
•			•

Figure 1-1

2) In the "Import addresses" page, enter the address book information as required (Figure 1-2).

Address book	
← → C 🗋 dbmail.li	.linkpc.net82/addressimport.asp 🖧 📮
🕑 WebMai	A admin@test.com 2013-08-26 @Logout English
<ul> <li>Receive</li> <li>Compose</li> <li>Mail search</li> <li>Mail folders</li> <li>Hetwork disk</li> <li>Administration</li> <li>Configure</li> <li>Logout</li> </ul>	Import addresses         Please copy CSV addresses here and then import those valid into your address book. Fields are separated by commas, and please not put commas in fields. CSV fields sequence is: UserName, Email.         Book:       Personal contacts         Mismose, support:       gouingzzoft.net, Youngzzoft, Customer Service Department, 18612345678, 0731-85537391, 0741-85537391, 0741-85537391, 0741-85548
4	

Figure 1-2

Address book information format is as follows.

CSV fields sequence is: UserName, Email, Company, Department, Mobile, Telephone, Fax.

Fields are separated by commas.

If there are no company, department, phone and other information, you can use spaces instead.

# **12 AAMail Database**

### 12.1 What Kind of Database Works with AAMail Mail

#### Server

AAMail supports two kind of databases, they are Access and SQL Server databases. You can choose an appropriate database according to your business size and mail counts. We recommend that you choose the relevant version of SQL Server 2005. If you have already installed SQL Server on your server, please note that SQL Server must support the "user name + password" authentication mode. If it is "Windows Integration Authentication Mode".

Platform recommend: Windows 2003 Server + SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition

Price-performance ratio recommend: Windows 2003 Server + SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition or above

Recommendation	Database Type	Number of	Features
Order		Accounts	
1	SQL Server	All enterprises	Good performance,
	2000/2005/2008	(more than 120	but you need to
	Standard /	accounts)	install the SQL
	Enterprise Edition		Server by yourself
2	SQL Server	Small and medium-	Free, physical file
	2000/2005/2008	size enterprises (50-	limit 2G/4G, but you
	Express (free)	120 accounts)	need to install the
			SQL Server by
			yourself
3	Microsoft Access	Small enterprises	Free, limited
	(Free)	(less than 50	performance, no
		accounts)	need to install, but it
			needs to be
			compressed
			regularly

Note: If it is 64bit Windows platform, then you need to install 64bit version of SQL Server

and 64bit version of SQL Server Management Studio Express. If you are using Windows 64 + Access database, then you need to enable the 32bit mode in Windows IIS, because Access ADO connection is 32bit. For details, please refer to "<u>Notes when Install Mail</u> <u>Server on Windows 64bit</u>".

### 12.2How to Reset the Database

- 1) Close the AAMail main interface and the backstage mail services processes.
- Open the configuration system file "data\aamailserver.ini" in AAMail installation directory with notepad.
- 3) Modify "DatabaseSetup=1" to "DatabaseSetup=0", and then save it.
- 4) On the desktop, double click the AAMail shortcut, and it will open the "AAMail Setup Wizard" dialog box.
- 5) Follow the "AAMail Setup Wizard" to reset the database parameters.

# 12.3Installation Guide of AAMail Database SQL Server

#### 2000

#### 1. SQL Server 2000 Installation Steps

1) Double click "autorun.exe", it will open the SQL Server 2000 setup program interface, and then click "SQL Server 2000 Components" (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

2) In the "Installation Components" window, click the "Install Database Server" (Figure 1-2).

Microsoft SQL Server 200 Enterprise Ed	Install Components
Install Database <u>S</u> erver	
Install <u>A</u> nalysis Services	
Install English Query	
<u>B</u> ack	E <u>x</u> it
Figure 1-2	

 In the pop up "SQL Server 2000 SP2 and below" dialog box, click the "Continue" button (Figure 1-3).

sql s	erver 2000 SP2 and below	×
1	<b>SQL Server 2000 SP2 and below</b> SQL Server 2000 SP2 and below is not supported by this version of Windows.	
To run t	he program, click Continue. For more information, click Details.	-
🗖 Don	't display this <u>m</u> essage again <u>Continue</u> Cancel <u>Details</u>	

Figure 1-3

4) In the pop up "Computer Name" dialog box, select the "Local Computer" radio button, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-4).

Computer Name		X
	Enter the name of the computer on which you want to create a new instance of SQL Server or modify an existing instance of SQL Server.	
	Or, enter the name of a new or existing Virtual SQL Server to manage.	
Inn	DB0D2381B4DB495	
	Local Computer	
	C <u>H</u> emote Computer C <u>V</u> irtual Server	
	Browse	
		_
	Help < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

Figure 1-4

 In the pop up "Installation Selection" dialog box, select the "Create a new instance of SQL Server, or install Client Tools" radio button, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-5).



Figure 1-5

6) In the pop up "User Information" dialog box, type the name and company into their corresponding edit boxes, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-6).

User Information		X
	Enter your name below. It is not necessary to enter a company name.	y
= = =	N <u>a</u> me: H P	
	Company: Youngzsoft	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	_

Figure 1-6

7) In the pop up "Software License Agreement" dialog box, click the "Yes" button (Figure 1-7).

Software	License Agreement			×
Ð	Please read the following Lie the rest of the agreement.	cense Agreement. I	Press the PAGE DI	)WN key to see
END-U SERVE	ISER LICENSE AGREEMENT ER LICENSE FOR MICROSOF	T SQL SERVER PF	RODUCTS	1
IMPOR agreem for the and ma docum the Pro INSTA AGREE YOUR The Pr	TANT-READ CAREFULLY: Ti nent between you (either an inc Microsoft software product ide ay include associated media, pr ientation ("Product"). An amen oduct. YOU AGREE TO BE BO LLING, COPYING, OR OTHEF E, DO NOT INSTALL OR USE PLACE OF PURCHASE FOR . roduct may contain the followin	his End-User Licens dividual or a single e ntified above, which inted materials, and idment or addendun DUND BY THE TEF WISE USING THE THE PRODUCT; Y A FULL REFUND. g software:	e Agreement ("EU ntity) and Microsofi i includes compute "online" or electro to this EULA may MS OF THIS EUL PRODUCT. IF YO 'OU MAY RETUR!	LA'') is a legal : Corporation r software nic accompany A BY U DO NOT N IT TO
l Do you will clos	accept all the terms of the pre- e. To install Microsoft SQL Se	ceding License Agre rver 2000, you must	eement? If you cho accept this agree	pose No, Setup ment.
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>Y</u> es	<u>N</u> o

#### Figure 1-7

- 8) In the "CD-Key" dialog box, enter the product key, and then click the "Next" button.
- 9) In the "Installation Definition" dialog box, select the "Server and Client Tools" radio button, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-8).

Installation Definition		×
	You can select one of the following types of installations.	
	◯ <u>C</u> lient Tools Only	
H III	Server and Client Tools	
	◯ C <u>o</u> nnectivity Only	
	This option allows you to install a server and the client tools. Use this option if you want to set up a server with administration capabilities.	
		_
_	Help < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel	

Figure 1-8

10) In the "Setup Type" dialog box, select the "Typical" radio button, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-9).

Setup Type				×
Click the type of Set	up you prefer, then clic	sk Next.		
• Typical	Installed with the mos	st common options	s. Recommended fo	or most users.
○ <u>M</u> inimum	Installed with minimur	m required options		
○ <u>C</u> ustom	You may choose the advanced users.	options you want	to install. Recomme	ended for
🗖 Destination Folder				
Program Files	B <u>r</u> owse	C:\Program File	s\Microsoft SQL Se	erver
Data Files	Bro <u>w</u> se	C:\Program File	s\Microsoft SQL Se	erver
			Required:	Available:
Space on program	files drive:		34789 K	1708028 K
Space on system of	trive:		132168 K	1708028 K
Space on data file:	s drive:		34432 K	1708028 K
	<u>H</u> elp	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Figure 1-9

11) In the "Services Accounts" dialog box, select the "Use the Local System account" radio button, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-10).

Services Accounts		X
Use the same account for eac	h service. Auto start SQL	Server Service.
C Customize the settings for each action of the setting of the	h service.	
C SQL Server	Service Settings	em account
C SQL Server Agent	C Use a Domain Use	account
	<u>U</u> sername:	Administrator
	<u>P</u> assword:	
	<u>D</u> omain:	WIN2003-ENT-32
	L Auto Start Service	
<u>H</u> elp	< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Cancel

Figure 1-10

12) In the "Authentication Mode" dialog box, select the "Mixed Mode (Windows

Authentication and SQL Server Authentication)" radio button, then add password for the sa login, and click the "Next" button (Figure 1-11).

Authentication Mode	×
Choose the authentication mode.	
○ <u>W</u> indows Authentication Mode	
Mixed Mode (Windows Authentication and SQL Server Authentication)	
Add password for the sa login:	
Enter password:	
Con <u>f</u> irm password:	
Blan <u>k</u> Password (not recommended)	
Help < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Figure 1-11

13) In the "Choose Licensing Mode" dialog box, select the "Processor License for" radio button, and then click the "Continue" button (Figure 1-12).

Choose Licensing Mode X
SQL Server 2000 supports two Client Licensing Modes
Per Seat - Each device that accesses Microsoft SQL Server 2000 requires a separate Client Access License.
Processor License - Each processor on this server requires a separate Processor License.
Please click Help to fully understand the implications of the licensing mode you choose.
C Per Seat for devices
Processor License for
<u>C</u> ontinue <u>H</u> elp

Figure 1-12

14) Microsoft SQL Server 2000 installation process (Figure 1-13).

🔒 Enterprise Edition		
Microsoft SQL Serve	r 2000	
	c:\\microsoft sql server\mssql\$youngzsoft\install\instdist.sql	

Figure 1-13

Up to this point, the installation of SQL Server 2000 is complete.

#### 2. Start the Service

- 1) Click "Start" -> "All Programs" -> "Microsoft SQL Server" -> "Service Manager", then it will open the "SQL Server Service Manager" dialog box.
- 2) Select the "Server" and "Services" (normally keep the default settings), and then click the "Start/Continue" button (Figure 1-14).

🔁 SQL Server S	iervice Manager	_ 🗆 X
Ser <u>v</u> er:	WIN2003-ENT-32	•
Se <u>r</u> vices:	SQL Server	•
	Refres <u>h</u> services	
	<b>Start/Continue</b>	
	II Pause	
	Stop	
🔽 🖾 uto-start ser	vice when OS starts	
Stopped - \\WIN2	003-ENT-32 - MSSQLServer	

Figure 1-14

3) Service started (Figure 1-15).

SQL Server 🤅	Service Manager
Ser <u>v</u> er:	WIN2003-ENT-32
Services:	SQL Server
	Refres <u>h</u> services
	<u>Start/Continue</u>
	■ <u>P</u> ause
	Stop
🔽 Auto-start se	rvice when OS starts
Running - \\\VIN2	2003-ENT-32 - MSSQLServer

Figure 1-15

For details of SQL Server 2005 installation steps, please refer to "<u>How to Install SQL</u> <u>Server 2005 Express</u>". For details of SQL Server 2008 installation steps, please refer to "<u>SQL Server 2008</u> Installation Steps".

### 12.4 How to Install SQL Server 2005 Express

SQL Server 2005 Express (32bit) Download SQL Server 2005 Express (64bit) Download

SQL Server 2005 Express is provided by Microsoft for free. AAMail combined the optimal design of database + files storage structure. The account information and decode content of the mails are stored in the database, but the original mails and attachments are still stored via file storage, which guaranteed performance and greatly reduced the demand for database capacity. Thus, though SQL Server 2005 Express's database physical file size is limited to 4G, and there are some function and performance limitations, it is still suitable for the enterprises which do not have too much users and mails.

You can install SQL Server 2005 Express first, and then upgrade to SQL Server 2005 Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition according to your needs. SQL Server 2005 requires .Net environmental support. If your OS is Windows 2000 or XP, you must install .Net environment before installing SQL Server 2005. If your OS is Windows 2003 or above, then you can install SQL Server 2005 directly.

 Download SQL Server 2005 Express, double click the installation package, it will pop up the "Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Setup" dialog box, then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

2) Wait while the system is checked for potential installation problems, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-2).

Success	13 Total 12 Success	O Error 1 Warning	
etails:			
Action	Status	Message	^
🥝 SQL Server Edition Operating System Comp	Success		_
🔥 Minimum Hardware Requirement	Warning	Messages	
🥝 Pending Reboot Requirement	Success		
🥝 Default Installation Path Permission Reg	Success		
🥥 Internet Explorer Requirement	Success		
🥝 COM Plus Catalog Requirement	Success		
ASP. Net Version Registration Requirement	Success		
🥝 Minimum MDAC Version Requirement	Success		
🥝 Edition Change Check	Success		

Figure 1-2

3) Type the "Name" and "Company" into their corresponding edit boxes, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-3).

Licrosoft SQL Se	rver 200	i Express	Edition	Setup	D
Registration Informat The following information	t <b>ion</b> will personalia	ze your installa	tion.		
The Name field must be f	illed in prior to	proceeding, T	he Company	field is optional.	
Name:					
yz					
Company:					
yz					
✓ Hide advanced config	uration option	s			
Help	[	< <u>B</u> ack	Next >	Can	cel

Figure 1-3

4) It will pop up the "Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition Setup - Feature Selection" dialog box, then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-4).

🙀 Licrosoft SQL Server 2005 Expre	ess Edition Setup 🛛 🛛 🛛
Feature Selection Select the program features you want installed.	
Click an icon in the following list to change how a featu	ire is installed.
Image: Client Components         Image: Client Component Client Client Component Client Component Client Component Client Client Component Client Client Client Component Client	<ul> <li>Feature description</li> <li>Installs the SQL Server Database</li> <li>Engine, tools for managing relational</li> <li>and XML data, and replication.</li> </ul>
	This feature requires 121 MB on your hard drive. It has 2 of 3 subfeatures selected. The subfeatures require 99 MB on your hard drive.
Installation path C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\	B <u>r</u> owse Disk Cost
Help Sack	Next > Cancel

Figure 1-4

5) Set the authentication mode. Pay attention to select the "Mixed Mode (Windows Authentication and SQL Server Authentication)" radio button, enable the "user name + password" authentication mode, and specify the sa logon password (Figure 1-5).

The authenti connecting to	ion Mode cation mode o SQL Serve	specifies r.	s the sea	urity used:	when			
Select the au	Ithentication	mode to	use for	this install	ation.			
<u>○ W</u> indows	Authenticat	ion Mode						
⊙ <u>Mixed Mo</u>	de (Window	s Authen	tication	and SQL S	erver Auth	ientica	ition)	ו
Specify the s	a logon pas: ssword:	sword be	low:					
Specify the s Enter pa:	a logon pas: ssword: **	sword be	low:					
Specify the s Enter pa: ******* Confirm p	a logon pas: ssword: ** oassword:	sword be	low:					
Specify the s Enter pa: ******* Confirm p	a logon pass ssword: ** 2assword: **	sword be	low:					
Specify the s Enter pa: ****** Confirm p ******	a logon pas: ssword: ** 2assword: **	sword be	low:					

Figure 1-5

6) Keep the default settings, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-6).

🚏 Licrosoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition Setup
Configuration Options Configure user and administrator accounts
✓ Enable User Instances This option enables users without administrator permissions to run a separate instance of the SQL Server Express Database Engine.
Add user to the SQL Server Administrator role This option adds the user who is running the SQL Server Express installation program to the SQL Server System Administrator role. By default, users on Microsoft Windows Vista operating system are not members of the SQL Server System Administrator role.
Help < Back Next > Cancel

Figure 1-6

7) Keep the default settings, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-7).

🖟 Licrosoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition Setup 🛛 🛛 🔀
Error and Usage Report Settings Help Microsoft improve some of the SQL Server 2005 components and services.
Automatically send Error reports for SQL Server 2005 to Microsoft or your corporate error reporting server. Error reports include information regarding the condition of SQL Server 2005 when an error occurred, your hardware configuration and other data. Error reports may unintentionally include personal information, which will not be used by Microsoft.
Automatically send <u>F</u> eature Usage data for SQL Server 2005 to Microsoft, Usage data includes anonymous information about your hardware configuration and how you use our software and services.
By installing Microsoft SQL Server 2005, SQL Server and its components will be configured to automatically send fatal service error reports to Microsoft or a Corporate Error Reporting Server. Microsoft uses error reports to improve SQL Server functionality, and treats all information as confidential.
Help < Back Next > Cancel

Figure 1-7

8) Click the "Install" button (Figure 1-8).

@∎	icrosoft	SQL	Server	2005	Express	Edition	Setup	
Re	ady to Ins Setup is read	t <b>all</b> y to be	gin installati	ion.				
9	Setup has enc change any of	ugh inf your ir	ormation to Istallation s	start co ettings,	pying the pri click Back, To	ogram files. To exit setup, c	) proceed, c lick Cancel,	lick Install. To
	The follow • SQL (Database	<b>ving c</b> Serve Servic	omponer er Datab :es)	nts wil	l be instal ervices	led:		
	Help	)			< <u>B</u> ack	Install		Cancel

Figure 1-8

9) The installation is complete, click the "Finish" button (Figure 1-9).

- 19	icrosoft SQL Server 2005 Setup	
Co	npleting Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Setup	
1	Setup has finished configuration of Microsoft SQL Server 2005	
Ref setu	er to the setup error logs for information describing any failure(s) that occurre .p. Click Finish to exit the installation wizard.	ed during
Sum	mary Log	
To r disa	ninimize the server surface area of SQL Server 2005, some features and serv bled by default for new installations. To configure the surface area of SQL Se	ices are rver, use the
Sur	ace Area Configuration tool.	
Co	nfiguring and Managing SQL Server	<u>^</u>
EX •	For improved manageability and security SQI	=
	Server 2005 provides more control over the SQL	_
	Server surface area on your system. To minimize	
	the surface area, the following default	
	configurations have been applied to your	
	instance of SOL server:	
	instance of DOLL server.	
	n TCP/IP connections are disabled	
	o TCP/IP connections are disabled	<b>×</b>

Figure 1-9

Up to this point, the installation of SQL Server 2005 Express is complete, and then you can begin installing AAMail. Please note that, for SQL Server 2005 Express data source, you need to change the default "(local)" to "machine name\SQLExpress". This is because the instance name of 2005 Express installed by default is different with SQL Server 2000, and SQL Server 2000 default data source can use "(local)".

For details of SQL Server 2000 installation steps, please refer to "<u>SQL Server 2000</u>". For details of SQL Server 2008 installation steps, please refer to "<u>SQL Server 2008</u> <u>Installation Steps</u>".

### 12.5 SQL Server 2008 Installation Steps

When you install SQL Server 2008 on Windows 2008 OS (If you haven't installed Microsoft.NET Framework 3.5), then there will be the following error (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

For details of Microsoft.NET Framework 3.5 installation, please refer to "<u>Microsoft.NET</u> <u>Framework 3.5 Components</u>".

The SQL Server 2008 installation steps are as follows.

- 1) Double click the "setup" in SQL Server 2008 installation package.
- 2) In the pop up "Program Compatibility Assistant" dialog box, click the "Run program" button (Figure 1-2).

📻 Program Compatibility Assistant			
This program has known compatibility issues			
Check online to see if solutions are available from the Microsoft website. If solutions are found, Windows wi automatically display a website that lists steps you can take.	1		
Program: Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Publisher: Microsoft Location: D:\SETUP.EXE			
After SQL Server Setup completes, you must apply SQL Server 2008 Service Pack 1 (SP1) or a later service pack before you run SQL Server 2008 on this version of Windows.			
A Hide details     Check for solutions online     Run program     Cance     Canc			
Figure 1-2			

3) In the pop up "SQL Server Installation Center" dialog box, you can choose the items which need to be detected according to your own needs (Figure 1-3).



Figure 1-3

 Click the "Installation", and then click the "New SQL Server stand-alone installation or add features to an existing installation" on the right side of the dialog box (Figure 1-4).



Figure 1-4

You can also upgrade from SQL Server 2000/2005 to SQL Server 2008 here.

5) In the pop up "Program Compatibility Assistant" dialog box, click the "Run program" button (Figure 1-5).

픚 Program Compatibility Assistant			
This program ha	as known compatibility issues		
Check online to see automatically displa	e if solutions are available from the Microsoft website. If solutions are found, Windows will ay a website that lists steps you can take.		
Prog Publi Loca	gram: Microsoft SQL Server 2008 isher: Microsoft ation: D:\setup.exe		
After SQL Server S pack before you ru	Setup completes, you must apply SQL Server 2008 Service Pack 1 (SP1) or a later service un SQL Server 2008 on this version of Windows.		
Hide details	Check for solutions online Run program Cancel		

Figure 1-5

6) In the pop up dialog box, click the "OK" button (Figure 1-6).

🎲 SQL Server 2008 Setup			_	
Setup Support Rules				X
Setup Support Rules identify problems that might occur when you install SQL Server Setup support files. Failures must be corrected before Setup can continue.				
Setup Support Rules	Ope	ation completed. Passed: 6. Failed 0. Warning 0. Skipped 0.		
	Hid	e details <<	Re-	run
	View	detailed report	Shahar.	
		Minimum operating system version	Passed	
		Setup administrator	Passed	
		Restart computer	Passed	
	0	Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) service	Passed	
		Consistency validation for SQL Server registry keys	Passed	
		Long path names to files on SQL Server installation media	Passed	
		0	K Cancel Help	

Figure 1-6

If there are any errors during the detection processes, then the prompt will not be the "Failure 0". Please pay attention to find the errors and then solve them.

7) Specify a free edition or enter the product key, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-7).

🍀 SQL Server 2008 Setup	
Product Key Specify the edition of SQL Serve	er 2008 to install.
Product Key License Terms Setup Support Files	Specify a free edition of SQL Server or provide a SQL Server product key to validate this instance of SQL Server 2008. Enter the 25-character key from the Microsoft certificate of authenticity or product packaging. If you specify Enterprise Evaluation, the instance will be activated with a 180-day expiration. To upgrade from one edition to another edition, run the Edition Upgrade Wizard. © Specify a free edition: Enterprise Evaluation © Enter the product key: JD8Y6-HQG69-P9H84-XDTPG-34MB8
	< Back Next > Cancel

Figure 1-7

8) Select the "I accept the license terms" check box, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-8).
| 🎲 SQL Server 2008 Setup                             |  |
|---|--|
| License Terms<br>To install SQL Server 2008, you r  | nust accept the Microsoft Software License Terms.  |
| Product Key<br>License Terms<br>Setup Support Files | |
|   | < Back Next > Cancel   |

Figure 1-8

9) In the pop up dialog box, click the "Install" button (Figure 1-9).

🊼 SQL Server 2008 Setup				
Setup Support Files				XXX
Click Install to install Setup Support	files. To install or update SQL Serve	r 2008, these files are required.		
Product Key	The following components are re	quired for SQL Server Setup:		
License Terms	Feature Name	Status		
Setup Support Files	Setup Support Files			
	,			
	,			
			< Back Install	Cancel

Figure 1-9

- 10) Wait for the installation.
- 11) Confirm the detection items all passed, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-10).

SQL Server 2008 Setup Setup Support Rules Setup Support Rules identify pro before Setup can continue.	lems tha	t might occur when you install SQL Server Setup support files. Failures	_□× must be corrected
Setup Support Rules Feature Selection Disk Space Requirements Error and Usage Reporting Installation Rules Ready to Install	Ope Hit Vie	eration completed. Passed: 10. Failed 0. Warning 1. Skipped 0. de details << w detailed report	Re-run
Ready to Install		Rule	Status
Complete		Fusion Active Template Library (ATL)	Passed
		Unsupported SQL Server products	Passed
		Performance counter registry hive consistency	Passed
		Previous releases of SQL Server 2008 Business Intelligence Develop	Passed
		Previous CTP installation	Passed
		Consistency validation for SQL Server registry keys	Passed
		Computer domain controller	Passed
		Microsoft .NET Application Security	Warning
		Edition WOW64 platform	Passed
		Windows PowerShell	Passed
		Windows Firewall	Passed
		1	
		< Back Nex	t > Cancel Help

Figure 1-10

12) In the pop up "Feature Selection" dialog box, select SQL features (Figure 1-11, the check boxes in red frames must be selected). Click the "..." button to select the installation path, and then click the "Next" button.

🍀 SQL Server 2008 Setup		
Feature Selection Select the Enterprise Evaluation feat can be clustered.	ures to install. For clustered installations, only Database Engine Services	and Analysis Services
Setup Support Rules Feature Selection Instance Configuration Disk Space Requirements Server Configuration Database Engine Configuration Error and Usage Reporting Installation Rules Ready to Install Installation Progress Complete	Features: Instance Features Database Engine Services SQL Server Replication Full-Text Search Analysis Services Reporting Services Shared Features Business Intelligence Development Studio Client Tools Connectivity Integration Services Client Tools Backwards Compatibility Client Tools SDK SQL Server Books Online Management Tools - Basic Management Tools - Complete SQL Client Connectivity SDK Microsoft Sync Framework Redistributable Features	Description: Server features are instance- aware and have their own registry hives. They support multiple instances on a computer.
	Select All         Unselect All           Shared feature directory:         C:\Program Files\Wicrosoft SQL Server           Shared feature directory (x86):         C:\Program Files (x86)\Wicrosoft SQL Server	erver\
	< Back	Next > Cancel Help

Figure 1-11

13) In the pop up "Instance Configuration" dialog box, normally select the "Default instance" radio button, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-12).

🍀 SQL Server 2008 Setup					
Instance Configuration Specify the name and instance ID fo	r the SQL Server instance.				
Setup Support Rules Feature Selection <b>Instance Configuration</b> Disk Space Requirements Server Configuration Database Engine Configuration	Default instance     Named instance:     Instance ID:	MSSQLSERVER			
Error and Usage Reporting Installation Rules Ready to Install Installation Progress Complete	Instance root directory SQL Server directory: Installed instances:	r:  C: \Program Files \Mic C: \Program Files \M	icrosoft SQL Server\	SSQL10.MSSQLSERVER	2 2
		Features	Edition	Version	Instance ID
			< Back	Next > Ca	ncel Help

Figure 1-12

14) In the pop up "Disk Space Requirements" dialog box, view the required disk space for installing SQL Server 2008, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-13).

🎲 SQL Server 2008 Setup		_ <b>_</b> ×
Disk Space Requirement	t <b>s</b> The SQL Server features you selected.	
Setup Support Rules Feature Selection Instance Configuration <b>Disk Space Requirements</b> Server Configuration Error and Usage Reporting Installation Rules Ready to Install Installation Progress Complete	Disk Usage Summary: <ul> <li>Orive C: 1755 MB required, 7994 MB available</li> <li>System Drive (C: \): 815 MB required</li> <li>Shared Install Directory (C: \Program Files \Microsoft SQL Server \): 411 MB required</li> <li>Instance Directory (C: \Program Files \Microsoft SQL Server \): 529 MB required</li> </ul>	
	< Back Next > Cancel	Help

Figure 1-13

15) In the pop up "Server Configuration" dialog box, set the "SQL Serve Agent" and "SQL Server Database Engine" account names as the System account (NT AUTHORITY\SYSTEM), and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-14).

🍀 SQL Server 2008 Setup				
Server Configuration				
Setup Support Rules Feature Selection Instance Configuration	Service Accounts Collation	a separate account for each S	QL Server service	
Disk Space Requirements	Service	Account Name	Password	Startup Type
Server Configuration	SQL Server Agent	NT AUTHORITY\SYSTEM		Manual 💌
Database Engine Configuration	SQL Server Database Engine	NT AUTHORITY\SYSTEM	]	Automatic 💌
Error and Usage Reporting				
Installation Rules		Lies the st	ma account for a	
Ready to Install		Ose the sa	inte account for a	I SQL Server services
Complete	These services will be configured au older Windows versions the user wil Help.	tomatically where possible to I need to specify a low privile <u>c</u>	use a low privileg je account. For m	e account. On some ore information, click
	Service	Account Name	Password	Startup Type
	SQL Full-text Filter Daemon Launcher	NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL S		Manual
	SQL Server Browser	NT AUTHORITY LOCAL S		Disabled 💌
		< Back	Next >	Cancel Help

Figure 1-14

16) In the pop up "<u>Database</u> Engine Configuration" dialog box, select the "Mixed Mode (SQL Server authentication and Windows authentication)" radio button, and then enter the password, and click the "Next" button (Figure 1 - 15).

🎲 SQL Server 2008 Setup	
Database Engine Configue	ration on security mode, administrators and data directories.
Setup Support Rules Feature Selection Instance Configuration Disk Space Requirements Server Configuration <b>Database Engine Configuration</b> Error and Usage Reporting Installation Rules Ready to Install Installation Progress Complete	Account Provisioning       Data Directories       FILESTREAM         Specify the authentication mode and administrators for the Database Engine.         Authentication Mode <ul> <li>Windows authentication mode</li> <li>Mixed Mode (SQL Server authentication and Windows authentication)</li> </ul> Built-in SQL Server system administrator account         Enter password: <ul> <li>Confirm password:</li> <li>Specify SQL Server administrators</li> </ul> Specify SQL Server administrators <ul> <li>SQL Server administrators</li> <li>MIN2008R2CN\Administrator (Administrator)</li> <li>SQL Server administrators have unrestricted access to the Database Engine.</li> </ul> Add Current User       Add       Remove
	< Back Next > Cancel Help

Figure 1-15

Click the "Add Current User" button to add the system account.

17) In the pop up "Error and Usage Reporting" dialog box, normally keep the default settings, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-16).



Figure 1-16

18) Check the factors which prevent the SQL Server 2008 installation, after confirmed, click the "Next" button (Figure 1-17).

🍀 SQL Server 2008 Setup			
Installation Rules			
Setup is running rules to determine i	if the ins	tallation process will be blocked. For more information, click Help.	
Setup Support Rules Feature Selection Instance Configuration Disk Space Requirements Server Configuration	Oper Hid <u>View</u>	ation completed. Passed: 9. Failed 0. Warning 0. Skipped 2. e details << detailed report	Re-run
Error and Liago Departing		Rule	Status
		Same architecture installation	Passed
Ready to Install		Cross language installation	Passed
Installation Progress		Existing clustered or cluster-prepared instance	Passed
Complete		Reporting Services Catalog Database File Existence	Not applicable
		Reporting Services Catalog Temporary Database File Existence	Not applicable
		SQL Server 2005 Express tools	Passed
		Operating system supported for edition	Passed
		FAT32 File System	Passed
		SQL Server 2000 Analysis Services (64-bit) install action	Passed
		Instance name	Passed
		Previous releases of Microsoft Visual Studio 2008	Passed
		< Back Nex	t > Cancel Help
			///

Figure 1-17

19) Check the required features of SQL Server 2008, after confirmed, click the "Install" button (Figure 1-18).



Figure 1-18

20) The installation progress of SQL Server 2008 (Figure 1-19).

🍀 SQL Server 2008 Setup	× 0 -
Installation Progress	
Setup Support Rules Feature Selection Instance Configuration Disk Space Requirements Server Configuration Database Engine Configuration Error and Usage Reporting Installation Rules Ready to Install <b>Installation Progress</b> Complete	Running validation configuration timing.         ConfigEvent_SQL_SNAC_SDK_sqlncli_Cpu64_Install_GetDefaultConfig_validation
	Next > Cancel Help

#### Figure 1-19

21) After the installation is complete, click the "Next" button (Figure 1-20).

🍀 SQL Server 2008 Setup		×
Installation Progress		
Setup Support Rules Feature Selection Instance Configuration Disk Space Requirements	Setup process complete	
Server Configuration	Feature Name	Status
	Database Engine Services	Success
Installation Rules	SQL Server Replication	Success
Ready to Install	Sull-Text Search	Success
Installation Progress	Client Tools Connectivity	Success
Complete	Management Tools - Complete	Success
	Management Tools - Basic	Success
		Next > Cancel Help

Figure 1-20

22) Click the "Close" button to exit the SQL Server 2008 Setup (Figure 1-21).



Figure 1-21

- 23) Up to this point, the installation of SQL Server 2008 is complete.
- 24) Click the "Start" button -> "All Programs" -> "Microsoft SQL Server 2008" -> "SQL Server Management Studio". It will open the SQL Server 2008 Management Studio Express (Figure 1-22).

Connect to Server	r i de la companya d	×
Microsoft*	Server 2008	E E
Server type:	Database Engine	-
Server name:	(local)	-
Authentication:	SQL Server Authentication	-
Login:		-
Password:		
	Remember password	
Conne	ct Cancel Help Options	»>

Figure 1-22

25) SQL Server 2008 Management Studio interface (Figure 1-23).

K Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio	×
File Edit View Tools Window Community Help	
🗄 🋄 New Query 📑 📸 📸 🕞 🚔 🖼 🥌 🙀 🖕	
Object Explorer - 📮 🗶	
Connect 🕶 📑 🛒 🔳 🝸 🛃	
😑 🐻 (local) (SQL Server 10.0, 1600 - WIN2008R2CN\Ad	
E Databases	
E Server Objects	
Replication	
E Cal Grant Anna Cal Grant Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna A	
🗄 👩 SQL Server Agent	
Ready	//.

Figure 1-23

It is very easy to install SQL Server 2008. You can follow the above installation steps.

For details of SQL Server 2000 installation steps, please refer to "<u>SQL Server 2000</u>". For details of SQL Server 2005 installation steps, please refer to "<u>How to Install SQL</u> <u>Server 2005 Express</u>".

## 12.6Install SQL Server Management Studio Express

<u>SQL Server Express 2005</u> (Desktop Edition) does not have "Management Studio Express" installed, so we have to install it ourselves.

Note: Before installing Management Studio Express, we have to install the MSXML6 patches first.

MSXML6 download link:

http://www.microsoft.com/zh-cn/download/details.aspx?id=6276 SQL Server 2005 Management Studio Express download link:

http://www.aamailsoft.com/download.htm

The installation steps of Management Studio Express are as follows.

 Double click the installation package, it will pop up the "Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio Express Setup" dialog box, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

2) Select the "I accept the terms in the license agreement" radio button, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-2).

License Agreement	
Please read the following license agreement carefully.	
MICROSOFT SOFTWARE LICENSE TERMS	
MICROSOFT SQL SERVER 2005 MANAGEMENT STUDIO EXPRESS	
These license terms are an agreement between Microsoft Corporation (or based on where you live, one of its affiliates) and you. Please read them. They apply to the software named above, which includes the media on which you received it, if any. The terms also apply to	D
any Microsoft	-
I accept the terms in the license agreement      I do not accept the terms in the license agreement	
a Daula Maraka Casaral	

Figure 1-2

3) Click the "Disk Cost..." button to select the installation folder, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-3).

Feature Selection	<
Select the program features you want installed.	
Click an icon in the following list to change how a fea	ture is installed.
Management Studio Express	Feature description Installs interactive management tools for running SQL Server, including SQL Server Management Studio Express.
installation path C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\	
	<u>D</u> isk Cost
· · · · · · ·	

Figure 1-3

4) Click the "Install" button (Figure 1-4).



Figure 1-4

5) Wait for the installation (Figure 1-5).



Figure 1-5

6) Click the "Finish" button to complete the "Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio Express Setup" (Figure 1-6).



Figure 1-6

 Click the "Start -> All Programs -> Microsoft SQL Server 2005 -> SQL Server Management Studio Express", and then you can open the Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio Express. The interface is as follows (Figure 1-7).

K Microsoft SQL Server Management	Studio Express	
Elle Edit View Tools Window C	ommunity Help	
Object Explorer         4 ×           2         2         2         7           Image: Comparison of the system of	Summary	* X
<ul> <li>□ Databases</li> <li>① System Databases</li> <li>□ Security</li> <li>① Logins</li> <li>① Server Roles</li> </ul>	1-1F5B7A0D14414\S 1-1F5B7A0D14414\SQLEXPRESS	SQLEXPRE: 5 Item(s)
Credentials     Server Objects     Paplication     Management	Name Databases Security Server Objects Management	
Ready		•

Figure 1-7

SQL Server Express 2005 (Desktop Edition) supports about 120 users. If the user number is more than 120, there will be problems when send and receive mails, so we recommend that you upgrade to SQL Server Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition.

## 12.7AAMail Database Login Failed

If the database account password is too simple, then there will be the database login failed problem (Figure 1-1).

	Database failed!	
Function:	ConnectOpen()	
Error Number:	-2147217843	
Error Description	'sa'	e
Information:	Provider=sqloledb;Data Source=dx-9d28674a9e1d\SQLExpress;Initial Catalog=sqlmail;User Id=sa	;Password=sa;



Solutions:

First, modify the database account password, and then in the AAMail configuration file of "mailserver.ini", modify the password for connecting to the database.

The specific steps are as follows.

 In the database Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio Express, modify the sa account password. For details, please refer to "<u>Modify SQL Server Database</u> <u>Account Password</u>".  Open "\AAMail\data\mailserver.ini", under the [Database], modify the "Password=sa" to "Password=Database sa Password" (Figure 1-2).



Figure 1-2

## 12.8 Microsoft.NET Framework 3.5 Components

If you have not installed the Microsoft.NET Framework 3.5, then when you <u>install SQL</u> <u>Server 2008</u> on Windows 2008 OS, there will be problems. Only when you have installed the Microsoft.NET Framework 3.5 on Windows 2008 OS, then the SQL Server 2008 can be installed normally.

The specific installation steps are as follows.

- 1) Click the "Start" -> "Administrative Tools" -> "Server Manager".
- 2) In the pop up "Server Manager" dialog box, expand the "Features", and then click the "Add Features" (Figure 1-1).

Server Manager				
File Action View Help				
🗢 🔿 🙋 📅 🛛				
Server Manager (WIN2008R2CN)	Features View the status of feature	es installed on this server a	and add or remove features.	
	Features Summary		? Features Summary Help	
	S Features: 0 of 42 installed	e e	Add Features	
	Jact Refrech: Today at 10:50 AM	Configure refrech		
	Kerresn: Today at 10:50 AM	Comigure refresh		
J			J	

Figure 1-1

 In the pop up "Select Features" dialog box, select the ".NET Framework 3.5.1 Features" check box (Figure 1-2).

Add Features Wizard		×
Select Features		
Features Confirmation Progress Results	Select one or more features to install on this server.         Features:         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more features to install on this server.         Image: Select one or more select one or se	<ul> <li>Description:</li> <li>Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5.1 combines the power of the .NET Framework 2.0 APIs with new technologies for building applications that offer appealing user interfaces, protect your customers' personal identity information, enable seamless and secure communication, and provide the ability to model a range of business processes.</li> <li>Install Cancel</li> </ul>

#### Figure 1-2

4) In the dialog box, click the "Add Required Role Services" button (Figure 1-3).

Add Featu	res Wizard		×
¢;≡	Add role services and features required Features?	for .NET Framework 3.5.1	
	You cannot install .NET Framework 3.5.1 Features unless the installed.	required role services and features are also	
	Role Services:	Description:	
	<ul> <li>Web Server (IIS)</li> <li>Web Server</li> <li>Application Development</li> <li>Security</li> <li>Windows Process Activation Service Process Model</li> <li>.NET Environment Configuration APIs</li> </ul>	Web Server (IIS) provides a reliable, manageable, and scalable Web application infrastructure.	
		Add Required Role Services Cancel	
(i) Why	are these role services and features required?		//

Figure 1-3

5) In the "Add Features Wizard" dialog box, keep click the "Next" button until it reaches (Figure 1-4), and then click the "Install" button.

Add Features Wizard		×
Confirm Installat	ion Selections	
Features Web Server (IIS) Role Services Confirmation Progress Results	To install the following roles, role services, or features, dick Install.	4
	Process Model .NET Environment Print, e-mail, or save this information	•
	< Previous Next > Install Cancel	

Figure 1-4

6) The installation progress (Figure 1-5).

Installation Progres	s
Features	The following roles, role services, or features are being installed:
Role Services	Web Server (IIS)
Confirmation	.NET Framework 3.5.1 Features
Progress	Windows Process Activation Service
Results	
	👷 💶
	Initializing installation
	< Previous Next > Install Cancel

Figure 1-5

7) Installation results (Figure 1-6). Click the "Close" button.



Figure 1-6

Up to this point, the installation of Microsoft.NET Framework 3.5 components is complete.

# 12.9 Modify SQL Server Database Account Password

We will take SQL Server 2000 database for example.

The steps are as follows.

- Click "Start" -> "All Programs" -> "Microsoft SQL Server" to open the "SQL Server Management Studio Express".
- 2) In the "SQL Server Enterprise Manager" window, click the "Security" node, expand the directory tree, and select the "Logins" node (Figure 1-1).

🚡 SQL Server Enterprise Manager -	Micr	osoft SQL Server	s∖SQL Serve	r Group\(loc	al) (Windows NT	)\5 🗆 🗙
🚡 Eile Action View Iools Window Help						_ Ð ×
(← →   Ē 🔢   🗙 💣 🔂 🗟   😤   😤	N 🕼	0 🖸 🗖				
	Logins	3 Items			1	
Microsoft SQL Servers	Name	Δ	Туре	Server A	Default Data	Default Langua
E (local) (Windows NT)	BUI	LTIN\Administra	Windows	Permit	master	Simplified Chine
	sa		Standard	Permit	sqlmail	English
🗄 🧰 Data Transformation Services	<b>S</b> sas		Standard	Permit	sqlmail	English
🗄 🛄 Management						
Server Roles						
🗄 🕕 Linked Servers						
☐ <sup>□</sup> Remote Servers						
Support Services						
WIN2003-ENT-32) YANG (Windows NT)						
	•					

Figure 1-1

On the right side of the window, it is the login account for SQL Server 2000.

3) Double click the login account (such as double click "sa" account), it will pop up "SQL Server Login Properties - sa" dialog box, then you can enter the new password into the "Password" edit box, and click the "OK" button (Figure 1 -2).

SQL Server Login Properties - sa	×
General Server Roles Database Access	
Mame: sa	
Authentication	-
O <u>W</u> indows Authentication	
Do <u>m</u> ain:	
Security access:	
O <u>G</u> rant access	
C Deny access	
Image:       Soll Server Authentication         Password:       ************************************	
OK Cancel Help	

Figure 1-2

 Up to this point, the steps to modify the SQL Server 2000 account password are complete.

The steps to modify SQL Server 2005 and SQL Server 2008 database account password are the same with the above ones.

## 12.10 Upgrade from Access Database to SQL Server

It is easy to use Access database without installation, which is suitable for trial use and smaller-scale enterprises. For details, please refer to "<u>What Kind of Database Works with AAMail</u>". However, Access database is not stable enough for long time heavy access pressure, and there are always some strange problems, which is the inherent problems of Access database. For example, repeatedly add and then immediately delete one same record, after tens of thousands of times operations, finally there will be no record in the database, but the size of the database at this time may become hundreds of M. After restored by compacting, then it could go back to a little more than 100K. You can click the "Tool -> Compact database" to auto compact and restore the database, and we

recommend that you run this once a week to reduce the potential errors.

The upgrade steps are as follows.

- 1) Install SQL Server, pay attention to use mixed authentication mode, and set the "sa" account password.
- In AAMail mail server, click the "Tool -> Compact database." This step is necessary. Otherwise you may encounter Access database errors, which will cause problems during the upgrade processes.
- 3) In AAMail main interface, click the "Operation -> Upgrade".
- 4) In the pop up "Upgrade wizard" dialog box, click the "Upgrade" combo box, and select "Upgrade from Access database to SQL Server", and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-1).

Upgrade wizard	×
Step 1/3. Select task	
New data structure needs to im	ort data from old version.
Please select what version to u	grade from.
Upgrade Upgrade from CMailSen	er 5.2+
Upgrade from CMailServ	er 5.2+
Upgrade from AAMail/D	3Mail 4.2x
All de Upgrade from Access da	tabase to SQL Server
	Back Next Cancel

Figure 1-1

5) Select the location of the older version, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-2).

Upgrade wizard	×
Step 2/3. Specify location	
Suggest you install this new version on a different new folder.	
(Upgrade from Access database to SQL Server)	
Option Import all accounts and all mails	
Location C:\DBMail	
Configure	
Back Next Cancel	1
	1

Figure 1-2

6) In the pop up "Database settings" dialog box, configure the SQL Server connection parameters. If it is SQL Server 2000, usually select the "(local)" database. Enter the user ID and password. Pay attention to click the "Detect" button to check whether the parameter settings are correct or not, and then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-3).

Database settings		×
Configu Don't fo	re database connection parameters here. orget to click Detect button to test the connection.	
Data source	(local)	
SQL Server service	MSSQLSERVER SQL Server run on remote	
Database name	sqlmail C:\DBMail\data\mail\sqlmail.mdf	
Authentication	User + Password authentication	
User ID	sa Detect	
Password	**********	
	OK Cancel	

Figure 1-3

7) Click the "Start" button to begin upgrading from Access to SQL Server (Figure 1-4).

Upgrade wizard	×
Step 3/3. Go upgr	ade
Upgra	de process depends on data volume of old version.
	: CMailServer account passwords will be reset to 123456.
Old ver	sion (Accounts=0, Mails=0)
Prog	ress 0%
Informa	tion Ready.
Impo	rted (Accounts=0, Mails=0)
	Back Start Cancel

Figure 1-4

Up to this point, the entire process of upgrade from Access database to SQL Server database is complete.

It does not matter even if you upgrade from Access to SQL Server failed. You can always back to the Access database status. If the upgrade process is failed, you can close AAMail, and then open "AAMail.ini" file, in the [System] section, modify the value of "DatabaseSetup = 1", and in the [Database] section, modify the value of "DatabaseMode = 0", and then restart AAMail mail server, it will back to the Access status, and all of the mails and data will not be lost.

### 12.11 AAMail SQL Server Database Connected Failed

If it connected to the database failed, you can check the problems from the following aspects.

- Check whether the AAMail "Database settings" is correctly set or not. For details, please refer to "<u>Database Settings</u>".
- 2) Check whether SQLServer used the "user + password authentication mode".
- Check whether the database account is disabled, and whether you have enabled "Enforce password policy".
- 4) In the database, check whether the AAMail database can be opened normally.
- 5) Check the "C:\AAMail\other" folder to see whether there is any fatal log like "databaseYYYYMMDD.txt".
- If the connection is still failed, please use the "Windows Integration Authentication Mode". For details, please refer to "<u>Set Windows Integration Authentication Mode</u>".

## 12.12 Access Database Problems

In the process of compacting the database, if there is any error (such as server's power failure or abnormally shut down), then it will rename the ".mdb" data file, which will not let you find the email account data in AAMail system. The problems can be mainly divided into the following two cases.

#### Compact Error

When you compact Access database with AAMail system tool, the server shut down abnormally or had power failure, and you found there are problems with receiving mails, or the mails and attachments are missed.

#### Upgrade Error

After upgrade from Access to SQL, the server shut down abnormally or had power failure, and you found that the old mails or attachments are missed.

#### Solutions

- Modify the renamed data file (such as "yaozhi.mdf\_") to "yaozhi.mdf" by deleting the "\_".
- 2) Close AAMail's all processes.
- 3) Open the "mailserver.ini" file in the "C:\AAMail\data" folder.
- 4) In the "mailserver.ini" Notepad, modify the "DatabaseSetup=1" to "DatabaseSetup=0"
- 5) Run AAMail again.
- 6) Upgrade Access database again.

# 12.13 Mail Server Access Database

You can view the Access database configuration by clicking "Settings -> Database settings" on the menu bar.

Due to Access database has some problems, such as limited capacity, so we did a lot of special designs on AAMail, such as create its own mail database for each account in Access database.

Access database is not stable enough for long time heavy access pressure, normally, we recommend that you click the "Tool -> Compact database" on the menu bar, and compact the database once a week to ensure the stable operation of the Access database.

It is not recommended to use the auto compact tool, which will damage the database files. We do not recommend storing large amounts of database files with Access for a long time, because there may be some problems about sending and receiving mails.

Access database only supports creating 50 AAMail accounts. For details about how to choose the database, please refer to "What Kind of Database Works with AAMail Mail

#### Server".

#### What should I do if it stopped running when I compact database with AAMail?

Method 1: Compact Access database multiple times.

Method 2: Find the related Access database, and then use Microsoft Access office software to directly open it after compacting.

#### Why it will pop up the "Compact Access Database" dialog box?

When AAMail is started, it will auto pop up the "Compact Access Database" dialog box to compact the database, thus ensuring AAMail's normal operation.

# 12.14 Method of Merging Database Table

If you have a table for each account, and you need to merge all accounts' mail tables into one, then you can follow the instructions below.

1) On the operation menu of AAMail main interface, click the "Upgrade" (Figure 1-1).

<b>6</b>	AMail Server 5.0.201	.30501 (1	Trial version	n will expire afte	er 0 days)						• ×
Оре	eration Account	Tool S	Settings H	lelp							
2	Refresh		Domain	Service	X Settings	🚖 Purchase	🔀 Shutdowr	ı			
(i))	Service		Account		User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume
	Log analysis		🗇 every	one@test.com	everyone		Group	(4)			[-1]
	T 1 5 513		🛛 🚨 admin	@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	import from file		🛛 🚨 mimos	a@test.com	Mimosa		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
Ŷ	Upgrade		🛯 🚨 postm	aster@test.com	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	System backup System restore		Suppo	ort@test.com	sylvia		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
⋗	Hide Hide & lock	Esc									
×	Shutdown	<b>F</b> 12									
			•			111		i i			•
[10:3 [10:3 [10:3	2:04]-[System] Ver=5.0 (2:46]-[System] Service (2:04]-[System] LAN=17	l.201305( s: NOT ir 72.16.36.	01, Win7[64 nstalled, Stoj 2, 192.168.*	] - Access, Welco pped! 1.126, 192.168.1(	ome! 01.1, 192.168.10	07.1					*
\ c.	Istem SMTP	PUP3 \	\ Remote \	Outgoing \ Inc	omina /						Ŧ
\ 35			V rienote /	∧ oragoing ∧ inc	oning /						
۲	Ready Total=5	6=e	veryone@t	est.com					201	3-08-28	10:32:47

Figure 1-1

2) In the pop up "Upgrade wizard" dialog box, click the "Upgrade" combo box, and select "Store all mails into private tables" (Figure 1-2).

Upgrade wizard
Step 1/3. Select task All upgrade task is safe for your old data. Please select upgrade task.
Upgrade from AAMail 3.99 Upgrade from AAMail 3.99 Upgrade from AAMail 4.2x Upgrade from CMailServer 5.2+ All da Upgrade from Access database to SQL Server Verify account messages and attachments Store all mails into public tables
Back Next Cancel

Figure 1-2

3) Keep click the "Next" button until completing the mails merge process.

During the process of merging mails, if one table is failed to copy, it may cause Outlook to receive mails repeatedly (Foxmail does not have this problem). So, please do the following steps before merging the mails.

Add "MergeToFavorite = 1" under the "[Log]" of the "D:\AAMail\data\mailserver.ini" configuration file (Figure 1-3).

mailserver.ini - Notepad	
File Edit Format View Help	
[Log]	*
MergeToFavorite = 1	
UpdateMailfolder=1 CleanOldLoggTime=2013-06-05 09:37:43	
CleanSpamboxTime=2013-06-05 09:37:43	
Clean01dMailTime=2013-06-05 09:37:43	
LastCompactTime=2013-06-05 09:37:47	
UpdateMailSpace=1 UpdateAttach=1	
opuatent tach-1	
[Service]	
ServiceStartups=[2013-06-05 09:37:47] Succeeded!	
ServiceSnutdown-L2013	-
	(°*)

The default value of "MergeToFavorite" is "0", when the value becomes "1", then it means merging all of the inbox mails into favorite, thus ensuring mails will not be repeatedly received by Outlook.

## 12.15 Case Sensitivity of SQL Server

The database which is created on <u>SQL Server</u> is not case sensitive by default. For example, the returned results of "select \* from xxxtable where xxxname='tim'" and "select \* from xxxtable where xxxname='TIM'" are exactly the same.

#### Check whether the database is case sensitive or not

For an already created database, you can check whether it is case sensitive or not. We will take SQL Server 2005 for example, open SQL Server Management Studio, select this database and select "Properties" from the right click menu to open the "Database Properties" dialog box. Find the database "Collation" properties as shown in the figure. "Chinese\_PRC\_" in the Collation properties of "Chinese\_PRC\_CI\_AS" means the mainland simplified UNICODE collation. "CI" (Case Insensitivity, insensitive) or "CS" (Case Sensitivity, sensitive) respectively specifying whether to distinguish case sensitivity. "AI" (Accent Insensitivity, insensitive) or "AS" (Accent Sensitivity, sensitive) respectively specifying whether to distinguish accents.

	Script - 🖪 Help					
🚰 General						
🚰 Files						
🚰 Filegroups						
Options (	🖃 Backup					
Permissions	Last Database Backup	None	_			
Extended Froperties	Last Database Log Backup	None				
	🖃 Database					
	Name	sqlmail				
	Status Shutdown, Normal					
	Owner	ThinkPadUser-PC\ThinkPad User				
	Date Created	2013/1/7 5:59:49				
	Size	3.19 MB				
	Space Available	0.45 MB				
	Number of Users	4				
	🖃 Maintenance					
	Collation	Chinese PRC CI AS	_			
Connection						
Server: YANJG\SQLEXPRESS						
Server: YANJG/SQLEXPRESS Connection: YANJG/ThinkPad User						
Server: YANG\SQLEXPRESS Connection: YANUG\ThinkPad User JY View connection properties						
Server: YARJG\SQLEXPRESS Connection: YARJG\ThinkPad User #} View connection properties Progress						
Server: TANJG/SQLEXPRESS Connection: TANJG/ThinkPad User View connection properties Progress Ready	<b>Name</b> The name of the database.					

#### Create a new database of case sensitive

When creating a new database on SQL Server, its case sensitive option, that is, Collation properties is "case insensitive" by default. If you want to create a case sensitive database, you can explicitly specify the required Collation properties when creating. We will take SQL Server 2005 Management Studio Express for example, if you want to create a case sensitive database, please pay attention to modify the Collation properties in the "Options" tab from "" to "Chinese\_PRC\_CS\_AS".

tudio Express						
New Database						
Select a page	Script - 🖪 Help					
🚰 General						
🚰 Options		[ 1.6.14]				
Tilegroups	Collation:	Server default/				
	Recovery model:	Chinese_PRC_BIN	<u>,Ko_</u> llo			
	-	Chinese_PRC_BIN2				
	Compatibility level:	Chinese_FRC_CI_AI Chinese PRC_CI_AI	KS	-		
		Chinese_PRC_CI_AI_	KS_WS			
	Uther options:	Chinese_PRU_UI_AL_ Chinese_PRE_CI_AS	<u>w</u> 2			
	2↓ 🖾	Chinese_PRC_CI_AS_	KS			
	- Automatic	Chinese_PRU_UI_AS_ Chinese PRC CT AS	_ns_ns ¥S			
	Auto Close	Chinese_PRC_CS_AI				
	Auto Create Statistics	Chinese_PRC_CS_AI_	KS WS			
	Auto Shrink	Chinese_FR_CS_AL_NS_				
	Auto Update Statistics	Chinese_PRC_CS_AS				
	Auto Update Statistics Asy	ncChinese_PRC_CS_AS_	KS_WS			
	Cursor Chinese PRC CS AS WS					
	Close Cursor on Commit Ena	bl Chinese PRC Stroke	90 BIN2			
	Default Cursor	Chinese_PRC_Stroke	-90_CI_AI			
	🖃 Miscellaneous	Chinese_PRC_Stroke	90_UI_AI_KS 90_UI_AI_KS_WS			
	ANSI NULL Default	Chinese_PRC_Stroke	90_CI_AI_WS			
	ANSI NULLS Enabled	Chinese_FRC_Stroke	90_CI_AS			
onnection	ANSI Padding Enabled	Chinese_PRC_Stroke	90_CI_AS_KS_WS			
-	ANSI Warnings Enabled	Chinese_PRC_Stroke	90_CI_AS_WS			
YANIG\SQLEXPRESS	Arithmetic Abort Enabled	chinese_inc_bcioke	Faise			
	Concatenate Null Yields Nu	11	False			
Connection:	Cross-database Ownership C	haining Enabled	False			
YANJG\ThinkPad User	Date Correlation Optimizat	ion Enabled	False			
View connection properties	Numeric Round-Abort		False			
They connection properties	Parameterization		Simple			
	Quoted Identifiers Enabled		False			
rogress	Recursive Triggers Enabled		False			
10 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19	Trustworthv		False			
Keady	ANSI NULL Default					

#### Conversion of database case sensitive

The case sensitive of SQL Server database can be converted. Before the conversion, pay attention to disconnect all the accesses to the database, otherwise the conversion will be a failure. Go to the SQL Server Management Studio Express, run the following commands, and then you can convert the database case sensitive.

Set SQL script case insensitive: ALTER DATABASE [DatabaseName] COLLATE Chinese\_PRC\_CI\_AI

Set SQL script case sensitive: ALTER DATABASE [DatabaseName] COLLATE Chinese\_PRC\_CS\_AI

#### Case sensitive problems of Turkish

Please note that if the SQL Server database is in Turkish, for "I" and "i", as well as "I" and "i" (without a point), they are always case sensitive. For other letters, it will be in accordance with the database Collation properties to distinguish case sensitive.

For example, even if the database has been set case insensitive (Turkish\_CI\_AS), it will return different results for "select \* from xxxtable where xxxname='iii'" and "select \* from xxxtable where xxxname='III'", because they contained "I" and "i".

However, for this "Turkish\_CI\_AS" case insensitive database, the two sentences, "select \* from xxxtable where xxxname='AAA'" and "select \* from xxxtable where xxxname='aaa'" will return the same result, because they don't contain "I" and "i".

#### Solution

If the database you created is case sensitive, then AAMail mail account must be case sensitive as well, otherwise, AAMail mail account's authentication will be failed, which will cause the sending and receiving mails problems. The solution is as follows.

- 1) Check the case sensitive database.
- 2) In the "Database Properties" dialog box, set the "Collation" properties as "Chinese\_PRC\_CI\_AS" to be case insensitive, please refer to the above "Check whether the database is case sensitive or not" for information.
- 3) After the settings is complete, AAMail mail account will be case insensitive.

# 13 Update, Backup and Maintenance

# 13.1 AAMail Version

Youngzsoft mail server version includes CMailServer, AAMail 3.x, AAMail 4.x, and the current version of AAMail 5.0. When we talk about upgrade, it means upgrading from CMailServer, AAMail 3.x and AAMail 4.x to AAMail 5.0. AAMail mail server supports auto import, which can help you upgrade from CMailServer or AAMail old version to AAMail 5.0 easily.

## 13.2Notes about the Upgrade

Since AAMail new version adopted the new data structure, storage mode and Unicode kernel, you can not directly reuse the original data of CMailServer/AAMail old version, but to re-import CMailServer/AAMail old version's domain names, accounts and emails to AAMail 5.0.

AAMail upgrade process will not destroy CMailServer/AAMail old versions' any original data.

Before upgrading to a new version, if there are large amount of mails, we recommend that you delete the old mails which have not been used for a long time. Otherwise, it will take a lot of time to import the old mails. For details of deleting mails, please refer to "Drop History Mails".

If the old version's database is Access database, please compact the Access database before upgrading ("Tool => Compact database").

# 13.3 Upgrade Steps of AAMail Mail Server

- Uninstall the old version. Uninstall the software, but the email data will not be lost. Please make sure that the main interface of the old version and its backstage services have been closed.
- 2) Install AAMail 5.0. We recommend installing AAMail 5.0 to the different installation directory with the older version.
- 3) After installation is complete, double click the AAMail 5.0 desktop shortcut, run AAMail 5.0, configure the new version of the database and the related system
parameters, and then go to AAMail main interface.

4) On the menu bar, click the "Operation -> Upgrade" (Figure 1-1).

Refresh       Domain       Service       Settings       Purchase       Shutdown         Service       Log analysis       Import from file       Import from f	AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)      Operation Account Tool Settings Help										
Service       Log analysis         Import from file       Import from file         Upgrade       Account         System backup       System restore         Hide & Esc       Hide & Esc         Hide & Lock       Import Studie         Shutdown       F12	2	Refresh		Domain 🛛 💮 Service 🖁	🔀 Settings	🚖 Purchase	🔀 Shutdowr	ı			
Log analyzis       import from file       ifile         Import from file       admin@test.com       Administrator       Domain admin       1/1       0.1M       0.1%       [1]         System backup       system restore       Account       1/1       0.1M       0.1%       [1]         System backup       system restore       Account       1/1       0.1M       0.1%       [1]         System restore       Hide & Esc       Hide & Lock       Support@test.com       sylvia       Account       1/1       0.1M       0.1%       1024M         System restore       Hide & Lock       Support@test.com       sylvia       Account       1/1       0.1M       0.1%       1024M         Shutdown       F12       F12       Import from file       Import from file <th>(i))</th> <th>Service</th> <th></th> <th>Account</th> <th>User name</th> <th>Department</th> <th>Туре</th> <th>Inbox/All</th> <th>Used</th> <th>Ratio</th> <th>Volume</th>	(i))	Service		Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume
Import from file         Administrator         Domain admin         1/1         0.11%         [1]           Wpgrade         mimosa@test.com         Mimosa         Account         1/1         0.11%         0.12%         [1]           System backup         postmaster@test.com         Postmaster         Account         1/1         0.11%         0.12%         [1]           System backup         support@test.com         Postmaster         Account         1/1         0.11%         0.12%         [1]           System restore         Hi de         Esc         Hi de & lock         Station         System/@test.com         support@test.com         support@test.com         System		Log analysis		@ everyone@test.com	everyone		Group	(4)			[-1]
Import Prom File <ul> <li>Import Prom File</li> <li>Import Prom Fil</li></ul>		Territ Gran Gila		🊨 admin@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[•1]
Upgrade       System backup         System backup       System restore         Hi de       Esc         Hi de & lock       Shut down         F12       F1         0.1%       F1         1.1       0.1%         0.1%       F1         1.1       0.1%         1.1       0.1%         1.1       0.1%         1.1       0.1%         1.1       0.1%         1.1       0.1%         1.1       0.1%         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1       1.1         1.1 <t< td=""><td>~</td><td>import from file</td><td>_</td><td>🚨 mimosa@test.com</td><td>Mimosa</td><td></td><td>Account</td><td>1/1</td><td>0.1M</td><td>0.1%</td><td>1024M</td></t<>	~	import from file	_	🚨 mimosa@test.com	Mimosa		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
System backup       Support@test.com       sylvia       Account       1/1       0.1M       0.1%       1024M         System restore       Hide       Esc       Hide       Esc       Hide       Income the sylvia       Account       1/1       0.1M       0.1%       1024M         Mide & lock       Shutdown       F12       Income the sylvia       Incom	Ŷ	Upgrade		🚨 postmaster@test.com	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
System restore Hide Esc Hide & lock Shutdown F12 Shutdown F12 Shutd		System backup		Support@test.com	sylvia		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
System / Fextore         Hi de       Esc         Hi de & lock         Shut down       F12         Image: Shut down       F12		Swetce voetovo									
Hi de       Esc         Hi de & lock       Shutdown         F12       Image: Shutdown         F12       Image: Shutdown         Shutdown       F12         Image: Shutdown       <		System restore									
Hi de & lock         Shutdown         F12         Image: Shutdown         Statistic State         Image: Shutdown         Statistic State         Statistic State         Statistic State         System (SMTP) POP3 (Remote) Outgoing (Incoming /	ۍ	Hi de	Esc								
Shut down F12          X       Shut down F12         X       Shut down F12         X       X         X		Hide & lock									
Shutdown         F12           Image: Shutdown         Image: Shutdown           Im											
3:14:15]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome!       6:23:30]-[System] Services: NDT installed, Stopped!       3:14:15]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1   System <a href="https://www.services.com">SMTP</a> POP3 <a href="https://www.services.com">Remote</a> <a href="https://www.services.com">Outgoing</a> <a href="https://www.services.com">Incoming</a> System <a href="https://www.services.com">SMTP</a> <a href="https://www.services.com">POP3</a> <a href="https://www.services.com">Remote</a> <a href="https://www.services.com">Outgoing</a> <a href="https://www.services.com"></a> Incoming	×	Shutdown	F12								
3:14:15]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] · Access, Welcome!       6:23:30]-[System] Services: NDT installed, Stopped!       3:14:15]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1   System <a href="https://www.services.com">SMTP</a> POP3 <a href="https://www.services.com">Remote</a> <a href="https://www.services.com">Outgoing</a>				1							
3:14:15]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] · Access, Welcome!       6:23:30]-[System] Services: NDT installed, Stopped!       3:14:15]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1   System <a href="https://system.com/system/</td> <td></td>											
I3:14:15]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501. Win7[64] - Access, Welcome!           6:23:30]-[System] Services: NOT installed, Stopped!           3:14:15]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1   System      SMTP      System      SMTP											
I3:14:15]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome!       I6:23:30]-[System] Services: NOT installed, Stopped!       I3:14:15]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1   System      System											
III         III           I3:14:15]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome!         III           I6:23:30]-[System] Services: NOT installed, Stopped!         III           I3:14:15]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1         IIII           System & SMTP & POP3 & Remote & Outgoing & Incoming /         Incoming /											
III         III           I3:14:15]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome!         III           I6:23:30]-[System] Services: NDT installed, Stopped!         III           I3:14:15]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1         III           System & SMTP & POP3 & Remote & Outgoing & Incoming /         Incoming /											
3:14:15]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome!         16:23:30]-[System] Services: NDT installed, Stopped!         13:14:15]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1         System       SMTP       PDP3         Remote       Outgoing	< M										
System / SMTP / POP3 / Remote / Outgoing / Incoming /	[13:14:15]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome! [16:23:30]-[System] Services: NOT installed, Stopped]										
System <u>A SMTP</u> <u>POP3</u> <u>A Remote</u> <u>A Outgoing</u> <u>A Incoming</u>	13:1	4: Foj-[System] LAN=17	2.16.36	.2, 192.168.1.126, 192.168.10	JI. I, 192. 168. IU	97.1					
System / SMTP / POP3 / Remote / Outgoing / Incoming /											
System A 3mm A 1013 A memore A diagoing A moonling A	System / SMTP > POP3 > Bernote > Outroping /										

Figure 1-1

5) In the pop up "Upgrade wizard" dialog box, select upgrade from which version according to your actual situation, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-2).

Upgrade wizard
Step 1/3. Select task         Image: All upgrade task is safe for your old data.         Please select upgrade task.
Upgrade from AAMail 4.2x Upgrade from AAMail 3.99 Upgrade from AAMail 4.2x Upgrade from CMailServer 5.2+ All da Upgrade from Access database to SQL Server Verify account messages and attachments Store all mails into public tables
Back Next Cancel

Figure 1-2

If your software old version is CMailServer, then click the "Upgrade" combo box, and select "Upgrade from CMailServer 5.2+".

If your software old version is AAMail 4.26, then click the "Upgrade" combo box, and select "Upgrade from AAMail 4.2x".

6) In the pop up "Step 2/3 Specify parameters" dialog box, click the "Option" combo box, and select "Import all accounts and all mails" or "Import accounts only, NOT import mails" as you wish. Click the "Location" combo box, and select the location of your old version, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-3).

Upgrade wizard							
Step 2/3. Specify parameters         Upgrade: Upgrade from AAMail 4.2x.         Suggest you install this new version on a different new folder.							
	Option	Import all accounts and all mails					
	Location	D:\AAMail					
		Configure					
		Back Next Cancel					

Figure 1-3

7) It will display the accounts and mails volume of the old version. Click the "Start" button to import the accounts and mails.

If there are many mails, please be patient to wait all mails been imported completely. If there are any problems during the import process, you can import the data again. The mails which have been already imported successfully will be kept a record in "D:\AAMail\Other\upgrade.mdb" file, so they will not be imported repeatedly. If you want to import all the data again, then you need to delete this file.

### 13.4 Backup Steps of AAMail Mail Server

### 1. Mail Server Backup

AAMail combined the optimal design of database + files storage structure. The account information and decode content of the mails are stored in the database, but the original mails and the attachments after decoded are still stored in the "data" folder, which guaranteed performance and greatly reduced the demand for database capacity.

Mail system auto backup function will occupy a large part of the system resources. Considered of the stability of the mail server, we choose to backup manually, which is very easy.

#### 2. Access Database Backup

It is relatively easy to backup <u>Access database</u>, and the steps are as follows.

- 1) Shutdown AAMail (Note: End the "AAMail.exe" process in the Task Manager).
- 2) Only copy the "data" folder in AAMail installation folder to complete the mails and database backup (The copy time is in direct proportion to the data size).
- 3) After the copy is complete, run AAMail.
- 4) The whole process of Access database backup is complete.

#### 3. SQL Server Backup

It is relatively complex to backup <u>SQL Server Database</u>. We will take SQL Server 2000 for example to illustrate the backup process of AAMail. The specific steps are as follows.

- 1) Close AAMail main interface. Note to end the "AAMail.exe" process in the Task Manager
- Open the SQL Serve Management Studio Express, and "right click 'sqlmail' -> All Tasks -> Detach Database..." (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

 After detached the database successfully, you only need to copy the "data" folder in AAMail installation folder, then the mails and database backup will be completed (The copy time is in direct proportion to the data size). After the backup is complete, you need to attach database, "right click the database
 -> select All Tasks -> click Attach Database..." (Figure 1-2)

🐕 SQL Server Enterprise Manager - [控制台根目录\Microsoft SQL Servers\SQL Server Group\(local) (Windows NT)\D 💶 🖸
🚡 Eile Action View Iools Window Help
□ 控制台根目录 Databases 5 Items
Microsoft SQL Servers SQL Server Group SQL Server Group (local) (Windows NT) New Database New Database All Tasks Backup Database Bestore Database Attach Database Attach Database Microsoft SQL Servers Refresh Export List Copy Database Wizard Help Support Services Mit Data Services WIN2003-ENT-32\YANG (Wir
Contains operations that can be performed on the object
contains operations that can be performed on the object.

Figure 1-2

5) In the pop up "Attach Database - (local)" dialog box, select the MDF file of database o attach (such as "C:\AAMail\data\mail\sqlmail\_Data.MDF"), and then click the "OK" button to complete the process of attaching database (Figure 1-3).

Attach Database - (local)	×
MDF file of database to attach: C:\AAMail\data\mail\sqlmail_D	Data.MDF
Original File Name(s)	Current File(s) Location
sqlmail_Data.MDF	☑ C:\AAMail\data\mail\sqlmail_Data.MDF
sqlmail_Log.LDF	C:\AAMail\data\mail\sqlmail_Log.LDF
•	
<u>A</u> ttach as:	sqlmail
Specify database owner:	\$a
	OK Cancel Help

Figure 1-3

6) Rerun AAMail, normally, the backstage service will be started automatically this time. If it doesn't, on the toolbar, you can click "service" button, and in the pop up "Service manager" dialog box, click the "Start" button. For details, please refer to "<u>How to</u> <u>Start AAMail in NT Service</u>" (Figure 1-4).

Service manager	×
AAMail run as Windows service. Service=Installed stopped, Stat	us=Stopped.
Service name AAMailServer Service dependence MSSQLSERVER	
<u>Start</u> Stop	Restart Close

Figure 1-4

7) Up to this point, the process of SQL Server Database backup is complete.

If you are using SQL Server 2005 and SQL Server 2008 database, the AAMail mail backup steps are the same with SQL Server 2000, only their operation interfaces are different.

## **13.5Drop History Mails**

If there are many history mails, you can delete some of them. <u>AAMail</u> supports selecting multiple accounts at one time, and then you can delete the mails before a specified period of time.

The steps are as follows.

1) Select an AAMail account or multiple accounts from the account list, and then right click them and select "Drop history mails" (Figure 1-1).

AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)									
Operation Account Tool Settings Help									
🚨 Account 🛛 Group 🌖	Domain 🛛 🆓 Service	🔀 Settings	🚖 Purch	ase 🔀 Shutd	own				
Account Status	Account	User name	Departme	nt Type	Ir	nbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume
🕀 🌖 test.com	🗇 everyone@test.com	everyone		Group		(4)			[-1]
	🊨 admin@test.com	Administrato	r	Domain adr	min	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	🊨 mimosa@test.com	Mimosa	🧟 New ac	count	F2	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
	Sector Straster (Sector)	Postmaste	New zr	oup	F3	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	Support@test.com	sylvia	Edit/v	ew account		1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
			🖌 Delete	account					
			💭 Find a	count					
			<b>61</b>						
			Clear	sendings					
			Dura h	nails					
			brop n	istory mairs	_				
			🖂 Send m	ail	F7				
			🔁 POP3 r	etrieve	F8				
			Group	relations					
			Superv	ising list			1		
Monitored list									
[13:14:15]-[System] Ver=5.0.2013050	1, Win7[64] - Access, Welco stalled, Stoppedi	ime!				1			*
[13:14:15]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2	2, 192.168.1.126, 192.168.1(	01.1, 192.168.1	07.1						
Sustem / SMTP \ POP2 \ Permete \ Outgoing \ Incoming /									
\ System / SMTP / PUP3 / Remote / Uutgoing / Incoming /									
Ready Total=5 4=po	ostmaster@test.com						201	3-08-22	16:41:22

Figure 1-1

 It will pop up the "Drop history mails" dialog box, in the "Before" edit box, enter the date, click the "OK" button, and then the system will delete the mails before the specified date (Figure 1-2).

Drop history mails		×
Click for help	Drop mail before specific date for accounts. Note these mails could not be restored.	
Selected	2 account(s)	
Before	2013/ 8/ 1 🔲 🔻	
	OK Cancel	

Figure 1-2

Selected: Select the account.

**All domain accounts:** Select then the delete range will extend to all accounts under the local domain.

Before: Delete all mails before this day (not including this day).

## 13.6Clear Sendings

### 1. Clear Sendings

Sometimes, some accounts may be stolen by someone and used to send spams. A lot of spams will be sent again after sent failed. These spams and resend mails will prevent the normal mails' sending, or even cause the mail server can not work properly. At this point, we need manual intervention to clear these sendings. For details of handling these spams, please refer to "AAMail Anti-spam Function".

### 2. The Number of Sendings

In the AAMail main interface, select "Status", and then find the "Database=XX" information on the bottom of the main interface (Figure 1-1). "XX" is the number of the sendings in database.

🛿 AAMail Server 5.0.20130818 (Trial version will expire after 43 days)									
Operation Account	<u>T</u> ool <u>S</u> ettir	ngs <u>H</u> elp							
🛛 🚨 Account 🛛 🕤 G	🚨 Account 🗇 Group 🕠 Domain 🛛 🛞 Service 🔀 Settings 👌 🚖 Purchase 🗶 Shutdown								
Account Status		Mail ID	Mail from	Mail to	Retries	Size	Next try	Message	
🕼 Mail sending		🕪 WB0	admin@test.com	wn@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to w.	
		🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	un@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to u	
		🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	postmaster@test	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to p	
		🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	on@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to o	
		🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	in@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to in.	
		🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	en@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to e	
		🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	an@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to a	
		🕪 WB0	admin@test.com	as@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to as.	
		🕪 WB0	admin@test.com	admin@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to a	
		🕪 WB0	admin@test.com	a@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to a	
		🕪 WB0	admin@test.com	2@test.com	3	3 31.5 M 08:04:		Start sending mail to 2	
		🕪 WB0	admin@test.com	1@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to 1	
		🕪 WB0	admin@test.com	everyone@test	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Start sending mail to e	
1									
[07:59:40]-[System] Ver	r=5.0.201308	18, Win2003[3	32] - Access, Welcom	e!					
107:59:40] (System) Services: SerdMail(20), POP3Remote(5), Admin=8025, POP3=110, SMTP1=25, SMTP2=0									
[U/:59:40]-[System] LAN=192.168.1.252									
-									
Survey CHTD DDD2 Bousts Outsting									
	V LOL2	V memore V	outgoing A meaning	/					
🖉 Ready Data	Ready         Database=13         2002-03-05         08:04:53         //								

Figure 1-1

### 3. Clear Sendings for the Specified Account

If you find one or multiple accounts are constantly sending spams, thus, there are many mails in the sendings list.

The steps of clearing the specified accounts' sendings are as follows.

1) Select an account or multiple accounts, and then right click the selected account or accounts. In the pop up menu, select "Clear sendings" (Figure 1-2).

🔮 AAMail Server 5.0.20130818 (Trial version will expire after 43 days)														
Operation Account Iool Settings Help														
🛛 🚨 Account 🛛 Group 🌖 Do	omain 🛛 💮 Service 🛛 🎇 S	Settin	igs 🛛 📥 F	Purchase	×	Shutdown								
Account Status	Account	U	ser name	Departme	ent	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume				
🕀 🌖 test.com	🗇 everyone@test.com	e	veryone			Group	(12)			[-1]				
	🚨 1@test.com		1			Account	3/3	62.9M	6.1%	1024M				
	2@test.com		2			Account	3/3	62.9M	6.1%	1024M				
	La@test.com	0	New acco	ount	F2	Account	3/3	62.9M	6.1%	1024M				
	admin@test.com	<u>a</u>	New grou	n	F3	Domain admin	8/8	107.3M	5.2%	[-1]				
	an@test.com	<u>_</u>	E di Asiana	P		Account	3/3	62.9M	6.1%	1024M				
	as@test.com			account		Account	3/3	62.9M	6.1%	1024M				
	an@test.com	×	<u>D</u> elete ac	count	unt Account		3/3	62.9M	6.1%	1024M				
	La in@test.com	Find account		Account	3/3	62.9M	6.1%	1024M						
	an@test.com		Clear sen	ar sendings		Account	3/3	62.9M	6.1%	1024M				
	Solution of the state of the st	Class solia		Account	8/8	107.3M	5.2%	[-1]						
	📥 un@test.com	aun@test.com	un@test.com		aunt@test.com		<u>U</u> lear mail	s 		Account	3/3	62.9M	6.1%	1024M
	📥 wn@test.com		Drop <u>h</u> isto	rop <u>h</u> istory mails		Account	3/3	62.9M	6.1%	1024M				
		<b>1</b>	<u>S</u> end mail		F7									
			POP3 retr	rieve	F8									
			Group <u>r</u> ek	ations		-								
	•		Supervisir	ng list				1		Þ				
1 [107-50-40] [Curter: 1 Ver. 5-0-2012001	10 M/w20021221 Access M/		Monitored	list										
[07:59:40]-[System] Ver=5.0.2013081 [07:59:40]-[Sustem] Services: SendM	i 8, winzuus(szj - Access, wj lail(20) POP3Bemote(5) Adm	un=8l	125 PDP3=	:110 SMTE	7=2	5 SMTP2=0				<u></u>				
[07:55:40] (System) LAN-192.188.1252														
<u>\ System { SMTP } POP3 } Remote } Outgoing } Incoming/</u>														
Ready         Total=13         2002-03-05         08:15:43         //														

Figure 1-2

2) In the pop up dialog box, click the "Yes" button, then the system will begin to clear the selected account or accounts' all sendings.

New mails may constantly come in, so you can execute the above operations multiple times to ensure that these accounts' all sendings can be cleared.

### 4. Clear Sendings for All Accounts

If you want to clear sendings for all accounts, in AAMail main interface, you can click "Status", and then right click "Mail sending". In the pop up menu, select "Clear sendings" (Figure 1-3). In the later pop up dialog box, click the "Yes" button, then the system will begin to clear all accounts' sendings.

🔮 AAMail Server 5.0.20130818 (Trial version will expire after 43 days)									
Operation Account Tool Settings Help									
🛛 🚨 Account 🛛 Group 🌖 Do	🤮 Account 🕤 Group 🕥 Domain 🛛 🛞 Service 💢 Settings 📥 Purchase 💥 Shutdown								
Account Status	Mail ID	Mail ID Mail from Mail to Retries Size Next try M				Message			
🕪 Mail sending	🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	postmaster@test	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to postmaster		
Clear sendings	WB0	admin@test.com	on@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to on@test.com		
A Befresh	WB0	admin@test.com	in@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to in@test.com		
	WB0	admin@test.com	en@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to en@test.com		
	🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	an@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to an@test.com		
	🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	as@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to as@test.com		
	🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	admin@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to admin@tes		
	🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	a@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to a@test.com		
	🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	2@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to 2@test.com		
	🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	1@test.com	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to 1@test.com		
	🚺 WB0	admin@test.com	everyone@test	3	31.5 M	08:04:46	Sent OK to everyone		
1									
[07:59:40]-[System] Ver=5.0.2013081	8, Win2003[3	32] - Access, Welcom	el					-	
07:59:40] (System) Services: SendMail(20), POP3Remote(5), Admin=8025, POP3=110, SMTP1=25, SMTP2=0									
[107:59:40]-[System] LAN=192.168.1.252									
System & SMTP & PUP3 & Hemote & Uutgoing & Incoming /									
Ready         Database=1         2002-03-05         08:05:35         //									

Figure 1-3

New mails may constantly come in, so you can execute the above operations multiple times to ensure that these accounts' all sendings can be cleared.

### **13.7 Solutions for AAMail Cannot Receive Mails**

#### Solutions:

First, check whether you can receive internal and external mails. Note: Please analyze the problem according to the "bounce message".

#### **Cannot Receive Internal Mails**

- 1) Please check whether AAMail mail server is running normally or not (For details, please refer to "<u>How to Check Whether AAMail is Running Normally</u>").
- 2) Please check the auto forward settings of email account A, and decide whether to leave copy after forwarding (Figure 1-1).

Auto forward setti	ngs	<b>—</b>
Click for help	<ul> <li>Enable auto forward</li> <li>Leave copy after forwarding</li> </ul>	OK Cancel
yaozhi@youngzsol	ít.com	*
		-

Figure 1-1

If you did not select the "Leave copy after forwarding" check box, then the mail which is received by account A will be auto forwarded to "yaozhi@youngzsoft.com", and this mail will no longer exist in account A.

3) If the firewall or anti-virus software intercepted the mail, please temporarily disable them to see whether the mail can be received.

#### **Cannot Receive External Mails**

1. Please check whether AAMail mail server is running normally or not (For details, please refer to "<u>How to Check Whether AAMail is Running Normally</u>").

2. Check whether the MX record is normal. Checking MX record tool: <u>http://www.aamailsoft.com/mx.php</u> Normal MX record (Figure 1-2).



Figure 1-2

If the MX record is unsuccessful, please contact the domain name service provider and modify the MX record (For details about how to modify MX record, please refer to "Domain MX Record").

3. Please check the auto forward settings of email account A, and decide whether to leave copy after forwarding.

If you did not select the "Leave copy after forwarding" check box, then the mail which is received by account A will be auto forwarded to "yaozhi@youngzsoft.com", and this mail will no longer exist in account A.

4. If firewall (or anti-virus software) intercepted the mail, please temporarily turn off the firewall (or anti-virus software) to see whether you can receive the mail.

5. If the other party's IP address is listed in the RBL blacklist, please follow the instructions below.

In the "Anti-spam settings" dialog box, click the "IP block list" tab, and then add the customer's IP address into the "White list" edit box (Figure 1-3).

Anti-spam settings				×
General RBL list	IP block list Address block list			
ß	White list		Black list	
Click for help	113.125.12.15; 192.168.1.1	*	11.125.12.10;	*
		Ŧ		*
			ОК	Cancel

Figure 1-3

6. Detect whether you have set AAMail anti-spam function. The mail may have been saved to the "Spam".

- If you have set anti-spam function, in the "Settings" menu, click "Anti-spam settings". Then in the pop up "Anti-spam settings" dialog box, click the "General" tab, and then click the "Action" combo box, and select "Add [SPAM] tag on Webmail subject".
- 2) Send a mail again for testing.
- 3) If the mail is saved to the "Spam", in the "Settings" menu, click "Anti-spam settings", and then in the pop up "Anti-spam settings" dialog box, click the "Address block list" tab. Finally, add the customer's mailbox domain name into the "White list" edit box (Figure 1-4).



Figure 1-4

### **13.8 Solutions for AAMail Cannot Send Mails**

First, please make sure the mail cannot be sent to LAN or Internet.

### **Cannot Send Mail to Internal Mail Account**

- 1) Check whether the recipient's account is correct or not.
- 2) In AAMail main interface, please check the "Mail sending". If there are many mails waiting to be sent, then it may delay the mails which are in the end of the list. And you need to clear the sendings, otherwise the server may be crashed. For details, please refer to "<u>Clear Sendings</u>".
- 3) Please check whether AAMail mail server is operating normally or not (For details, please refer to "<u>How to Check Whether AAMail is Running Normally</u>").
- 4) The reasons for anti-virus software.
- 5) The reasons for the firewall (For details, please refer to "<u>Enable AAMail Mail Server</u> <u>in Firewall</u>").
- 6) Access databases. If you are using Access database, and the account number is more than 50, then the mails may not be sent or be delayed for a long time. Solution: In AAMail main interface, on the "Tool" menu, click "Compact database". In the pop up dialog box, click the "Yes" button to compact the database. This is a temporary solution. If the account number is more than 50, please install the SQL Server database. For details, please refer to "AAMail Database".

### **Cannot Send Mail to Internet**

- 1) Check whether the recipient's account is correct or not.
- 2) In AAMail main interface, please check the "Mail sending". If there are many mails waiting to be sent, then it may delay the mails which are in the end of the list. And you need to clear the sendings, otherwise the server may be crashed.
- 3) Please check whether AAMail mail server is operating normally or not.
- 4) The reasons for anti-virus software.
- 5) The reasons for the firewall.
- The reasons for the router (For details, please refer to "<u>Enable AAMail Mail Server in</u> <u>Router</u>").
- 7) The other party has listed your mailbox (or IP) in the blacklist (Normally, in the bounce, it will describe this issue. Solution: Contact the other party, and let them put your mailbox (or IP) in the white list).
- 8) Your IP (or mail domain) was listed in the RBL, and the recipient has applied the RBL blacklist, which makes your sendings be rejected by the recipient (For details about checking whether your IP is listed in the RBL organization, please refer to point 6 of "<u>AAMail Diagnose Function</u>". For details about remove your IP from the RBL blacklist, please refer to "<u>Solutions for IP Address Being Listed in RBL</u>").
- 9) Access databases. If you are using Access database, and the account number is more than 50, then the mails may not be sent or be delayed for a long time. Solution: In AAMail main interface, on the "Tool" menu, click "Compact database". In the pop

up dialog box, click the "Yes" button to compact the database. This is a temporary solution. If the account number is more than 50, please install the SQL Server database.

### 13.9How to Check Whether AAMail is Running

### Normally

AAMail Main Interface (Figure 1-1).

🤣 AAMail Server 5.0.20130818 (Trial version will expire after 42 days)						
Operation Account Tool Setting	gs <u>H</u> elp					
🛛 🚨 Account 🛛 Group 🌖 Do	main   💮 Service 🛛 🔀 S	iettings 🛛 📥 P	Purchase 🔀	Shutdown		
Account Status	Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbo	
🕀 🌖 test.com	everyone@test.com	everyone		Group		
	🚨 admin@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin		
	🚨 aline@test.com	aline		Account		
	▲ as@test.com	as		Account		
	🚨 custom@test.com	custom		Account		
	🚨 cute@test.com	cute		Account		
	🚨 da@test.com	da		Account		
	🚨 df@test.com	df		Account		
	🚨 ds@test.com	ds		Account		
	l & new@test.com	new		Account		
	🚨 postmaster@test.com	Postmaster		Account		
	l & sa@test.com	sa		Account		
	🚨 sd@test.com	sd		Account		
I						
[02:01:32]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130818, Win2003[32] - SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine, Welcome! [02:01:32]-[System] Services: SendMail(20), POP3Remote(5), Admin=8025, POP3=110, SMTP1=25, SMTP2=0 [02:01:32]-[System] LAN=192.168.1.252						
					-	
System (SMTP) POP3	. Remote $\lambda$ Outgoing $\lambda$ Inco	ming /				
Ready Total=13 1=e	veryone@test.com		2002-0	03-06 02:07:57	1.	

Figure 1-1

Please see the above information list (red frame)

**Ver=5.0:** Means that the version of AAMail is 5.0.

SQL Server 2000 Enterprise Edition: Shows the database information.

Welcome!: Indicates accessing the database successfully.

**Services:** Shows AAMail services. If AAMail services had not been started, there will be a "?" after "Services".

SendMail (20): 20 send mail threads.

POP3Remote (5): 5 remote receive threads.

Admin=8025: This port is used for the communications between interface and backstage services, meanwhile the main interface is also through this port, and confirm whether the backstage service is running normally.

**POP3=110:** Port of receiving mails.

SMTP1=25: Port of sending mails.

LAN: IP address of the LAN.

You can check the information according to the above information list.

### 13.10 Solutions for AAMail Crashed

The running environment of mail server is very complex (such as a variety of nonstandard format mails), so in some cases, it may cause the server crashed or backstage services stopped. There is an auto detection function in AAMail main interface, which will help you check whether the backstage service is running normally. If it detected the problem, then it will automatically restart the backstage service.

The steps are as follows.

- 1) In AAMail main interface, on the toolbar, click the "Service" button, and then click the "Start" button, and try to manually restart the backstage service.
- 2) If you find it stops after startup, please check the "c:\AAMail\dump folder", and see whether there are any files whose file extension is ".dmp". If there are, please zip the "c:\AAMail\dump" and the entire folder of "c:\AAMail\other" and send them to "support@youngzsoft.net" for analysis and processing.
- 3) Prepare for remote desktop, and send the server's IP address, account and password to "support@youngzsoft.net", or contact us online to get the remote technical support. Or you can run "c:\AAMail\teamviewer4.exe", and then send the ID and password to "support@youngzsoft.net".

### 13.11 What If I Forgot the Admin Password

### AAMail 5.0

If you are using AAMail 5.0, the solutions for forgetting the admin password are as follows.

- 1) In the "AAMail\data" folder, open the "mailserver.ini" file.
- Delete the characters after "AdminPassword=", and then save the "mailserver.ini" file.

Before deleting (Figure 1-1).

.

Ξ

			201620 3	12 A 12 A	
	1 mm m 2 l		N	1	and the second
	mail	server	$\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{r}$	voter	nan
_	111011	SCITCI		ACTER	Juu

P	F	F	10	111
File	Edit	Format	View	Help

The Lot Former Hen Help
[Setup] WebmailEnable=0
WebmailLoginMode=0
WebMailName=mail
WebmailUrl=http://127.0.0.1/mail
Setup=1
DatabaseSetup=1 SaturData=2012_12_06
SetupDate=2012=12=00 SetupMext=2012=12=27
SetupCode=9246c710ff42cf6c039946238885f5c4
FirstRun=0
[Interface]
Language=ChineseGB
1113-60 100 100 60 60 60 120
AutoRup=1
Ninimized=0
AutoLock=1
AdminPassword=MQ==
WelcomeMail=1

Figure 1-1

After deleted (Figure 1-2).

🗍 mailserver.ini - Notepad	
File Edit Format View Help	
[Setup] WebmailEnable=0 WebmailLoginMode=0 WebMailName=mail WebmailUrl=http://127.0.0.1/mail Setup=1 DatabaseSetup=1 SetupDate=2012-12-06 SetupNext=2012-12-06 SetupNext=2012-12-27 SetupCode=9246c710ff42cf6c039946238885f5c4 FirstRun=0	A M
[Interface] Language=ChineseGB 1103=135,75,75,45,86,60,60,50,60,140, 1113=60,100,100,60,60,60,120, AutoRun=1 Minimized=0 AutoLock=1 AdminPassword= WelcomeMail=1	~

### Figure 1-2

3) After restarting AAMail, the admin password was cleared and blank. If you need to reset the admin password, please refer to the "Admin Password".

### AAMail4.x previous version

If your AAMail version is earlier than 4.x, the solutions for forgetting the admin password are as follows.

- 1) Open the SQL Server Management Studio Express.
- 2) In the SQL Server Management Studio Express, enter a statement: "update systemini set paramvalue=" where paramno=106".
- 3) After successfully executed, you can clear the admin password, and then it will be blank.

## 13.12 Solutions for IP Address Being Listed in RBL

If your **IP was listed in rbl blacklist**, usually, in the bounce, there will be a link for you to apply for removing your IP from the RBL list.

Suppose that, in the bounce notice, it prompts us to go to "<u>http:www.sophos.com/security/ip-lookup?ip=113.87.247.26</u>" for applying for removing. If your sendings are often rejected, and there is no relevant bounce notice, please go to

"www.blacklistalert.org" to detect whether your IP was listed in the blacklist.

The application steps are as follows.

Here, we will take "www.spamhaus.org" for example.

1) First, go to "www.spamhaus.org", and then click the "Blocklist Removal Center" (Figure 1-1).

			6	
SPAMH	AUS			HE SPAMHAUS PROJECT
SBL	XBL PBL	DBL DROP	ROKSO	WHITELIST
Blocklist Removal Center			About Spamhaus   Contacts	Official Statements   Sponsors
Spamhaus tracks the provides dependable and works with Law I	Internet's spam senders and realtime anti-spam protection inforcement to identify and p	spam services, n for Internet networks, ursue spammers worldwid	e. Pro Net Wo	vect Internet works rldwide
Spamhaus tracks the provides dependable and works with Law I	Internet's spam senders and realtime anti-spam protection Enforcement to identify and p	spam services, n for Internet networks, ursue spammers worldwidd	e. Wo	ridwide
Spamhaus tracks the provides dependable and works with Law I Blocklists	Internet's spam senders and realtime anti-spam protection Enforcement to identify and p Blocklist Removal	spam services, n for Internet networks, ursue spammers worldwid Documents	Pro Net ₩o	itect Internet works ridwide FAQs   News Blog D
Spamhaus tracks the provides dependable and works with Law I Blocklists Safe DNSBLs for safe filters	Internet's spam senders and realtime anti-spam protection inforcement to identify and p Blocklist Removal Blocked? To check, get info and resolve listings go to > Blocklist Removal Center	spam services, n for Internet networks, ursue spammers worldwid Documents > Consumer Protection > The Definition of "Spam" > Email Marketing Guide	Pro Net Wo Pro Wo Wo Negister of Known Spam Operations > ROKSO Policy & FAQs	FAQE   News Blog Spamhaus News How hosting providers can battle fraudulent sign-ups

Figure 1-1

2) In the "Enter an IP Address" edit box, enter the IP address, and then click the "Lookup" button to test whether your IP was listed in **rbl blacklist** (Figure 1-2)



Figure 1-2

 If your IP was listed in the blacklist, then there will be a corresponding prompt (Figure 1-3) which shows that your IP was listed in "PBL1537080", then click the "PBL1537080".

	ry/ip/113.87.247.26	▼ C 【 📓 * 百度 <ctrl+k> 👂 🔛 ▼</ctrl+k>	. ↑ ↑		5 -	
Blocklist Documents	Blocklist Removal Center Blocklist Lookup Results		This looku manual (r	up tool is fo	r ited)	
SBL FAQs XBL FAQs PBL FAQs	113.87.247.26 is not listed in the SBL		lookups o use of au access th	inly. Any pe tomated too is web look	rceived ols to	
DBL FAQs How Blocklists Work	113.87.247.26 is listed in the PBL, in the fi • <u>PBL1537080</u>	ollowing records:	system w firewalling counterm	ill result in g or other easures.		
	113.87.247.26 is not listed in the XBL					
	Not Listed. If the IP address or domain you are checking does not show as listed in the results above, then it is not currently in any Spamhaus blocklist. If you are getting email reject messages which say it is listed by a Spamhaus blocklist, then see this FAQ	Listed. If the IP address or domain you are checking is listed in any of our blocklists above, this page will tell you which one(s) and will give you a link to the exact record. Follow the link. The linked page will explain why the address is listed and what to do to				

Figure 1-3

4) Click the "Remove an IP from PBL" button (Figure 1-4).



Figure 1-4

5) In the bottom of the page, select the "I have read and I have understood this page" check box, and then click the "Remove IP Address ..." button (Figure 1-5).

Www.spamhaus.org/pbl/removal/			₽ 🖫 + 🚳 + 1		11 -
🖥 访问最多 📙 火狐官方站点 🗋 新手上路 📙 常用网址 М	关于发件籍和草稿箱 🦁 Yo	oungzsoft Registra			🖸 书签
<ul> <li>VJPJRES X XX E J MALE X MALE XX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX</li></ul>	N' in your email program's ac smove an IP address from the er, and (B) if you have a specif ippliance, off the Static IP addr IP address from the PBL datal IP address. If spam is then de eria of those lists. a removal, do NOT give a Free I. The PBL system does not pro ke if you use any 'freemail' address we an IP address that is also list jest. You can not remove an IP for your ISP to resolve the issue esses are not actually deleted i	Aungzson negistra count settings. See: How PBL if (A) the IP address ic technical reason for m ess. In all other cases y base you are assuming in tected from an IP address mail or free webmail address removals from free dress). Always use your sted in another Spamhan address that has been s e. from the PBL master data a current PBL zone build	w do I turn on SMTP Authentic s is Static and has proper Rev eeding to run a 'direct-to-MX' iou should NOT remove an IP responsibility for any Spam th ess excluded from PBL, it may dress (such as @gmail.com, @ email accounts (the system wi real address and your own di us database (such as SBL or ) et to 'non-removable' by you iabase, instead they are adde	eation? verse DNS assigne email service, suc address from the hat may later v be listed in SBL of photmail.com, ill simply discard a omain. (BL) due to other r ISP. In this case d to a suppression 2 address. Safegue	d ch nr
are built in to prev If yo remove II I Remove	vent abuse of the removal facil u have understood to val process: have read and I hav re IP Address	this page, click this page, click re understood ti	articularly by automated bots below to begin the his page	). :	E
© 1998-2012 The Spamhaus Project Ltd. All rights reserv	red.			Legal   Priv	racy
				터 🖡 🗵	**

Figure 1-5

6) Enter the relevant information on this page (Figure 1-6).

www.spamhaus.org/pbl	/removal/form/	② ☆ マ C S + 百度 < Ctrl + K > P S + ③ + 合 △ 小 + :
访问最多 🦲 火狐官方站点 🛄	新手上路 📙 常用网址 M 关于发件籍和	D草稿箱 🦻 Youngzsoft Registra 💽 书
	PBL Adviso	ory
Removal Process	Policy Block List IP R	Removal Form
> Step 1:	Information Required	
Request Removal	IP Address to remove	
Verify Request	Your Email Address	
Please complete all fields. This information is kept		Use your real address at your own domain. Do not use a free email address no gmail/hotmail/yahoo/etc.). See <u>why</u> .
Policy	This IP is in Country	Please Select 👻
	This IP Address is	Dynamic 👻
	This IP Belongs to	A Personal Computer 💌
	Numbers Picture	124407
	Enter the Numbers shown	
		(If you cannot see the numbers picture above, make sure your web browser accepts cookies from www.spamhaus.org)
		Submit
	Next step: To verify this request, a contain a token (5-digit code) which your request cannot be processed.	confirmation email will be sent to the email address you entered above. The email will h you must enter at Step 2 (Verify Request) to de-list this IP address. Without this code
		े ज्य <b>म</b> ड

Figure 1-6

**IP Address to remove:** The IP address which is applied for removing.

**Your Email Address:** Using a real email address (the email address which is unable to send emails currently). Do not use a free email address.

This IP is in Country: Select a country.

This IP Address is: Select the IP type (such as dynamic IP or static IP).

This IP Belongs to: IP is used for what (for company or mail server).

Enter the Numbers shown: Enter the verification code.

- 7) Finally, click the "submit" button to submit the information, wait for some time, then the "spamhaus.org" will send an email to the email address you just submitted.
- After received the email from "spamhaus.org", follow the prompt to remove your IP from the blacklist.

How to remove IP from the RBL blacklist? For other RBL website, the IP removing process is basically the same.

For more information, please refer to "Anti-spam".

## 13.13 How to Check AAMail Log

1. Check the Log of AAMail 5.0

The steps are as follows.

- 1) In the "Operation" menu, click "Log analysis".
- 2) In the pop up "Log analysis" dialog box, set the log parameters (Figure 1-1).

Log a	nalysis				_ 🗆 ×
	Ø	Date 2002-03-0 Log type All logs Max logs 50	6 Time 00:00:00 Account [cute@test.com Keyword	To 24:59:59	<u>Eolder</u>
N. 2	Type Incoming	Time 03:06 02:01:33	Context cute@test.com (127.0.0.1) - 200203060	Content Received mail/S002030500000010 from norepl	

Figure 1-1

Date: Specify a queried date.
Time To: Specify the queried time range.
Log type: Specify the queried log type.
Account: Specify the queried account.
Max logs: Specify the displayed information lines.
Keyword: Enter the keyword.
Query: Click the button to query.
Export: Export the query logs in CSV format.
Folder: Open the folder where the log files are stored.
Close: Closes the Log dialog box.

For example, if you need to query the incoming logs of "cute@test.com" from 00:00 to 24:5959 on Mar. 6th, 2012. You can see the query result below (Figure 1-2).

Log analysis				<u> </u>
0	Date 2002-03-0 Log type All logs Max logs 50	6 Time 00:00:00 Account cute@test.com Keyword	To 24:59:59 Query ▼ <u>Export</u>	Eolder Close
N. Type	Time	Context	Content	
2 Incoming	03-06 02:01:33	cute@test.com (127.0.0.1) - 200203060	Received mail/SU02030500000010 from norepl	

Figure 1-2

The steps to check the logs of AAMail 4.x and 3.x are similar to AAMail 5.0, and the query principle is the same. Only the layout of the "Log analysis" dialog box is different.

### 2. Other Folder

Apart from checking the above logs, in "AAMail\other" folder, you can also check the "database fatal logs, SMTP send logs, notice logs, etc." (Figure 1-3).

🗁 C:\AAMail\other		
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp		
🔇 Back 🝷 🕥 👻 🏂 🔎 Search 🌔 Folders 🛛	🕸 🌶 🗙 🍤   🎰	
Address 🛅 C:\AAMail\other		Go
database20130829.txt Text Document 46 KB	MetaBase.xml XML Document 37 KB	
notice20130829.txt Text Document	<b>smtp20130829.txt</b> Text Document O KB	
4 objects	81,5 KB 🚽 😼 My Computer	1.

Figure 1-3

3. Dump Folder

The folder we must pay attention (Figure 1-4).

🗁 C:\AAMail	
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp	A
🔾 Back 🝷 🌍 🝷 🏂 🔎 Search 🌔 Folders 🛛 🕼 💓 🗙 🍤	<b></b>
Address 🛅 C:\AAMail	💌 🄁 Go
data dump language other resource	web aamailserver
aamailserve cmiis6.dll cmiis7.exe compact.exe history.txt	ibeay32.dll ssleay32.dll
teamviewe unins000.dat unins000.exe YzUpdate.exe	
18 objects	31 MB

Figure 1-4

**dump folder:** dump folder stored the error information of the problem procedure, which will be helpful for our developers to solve the problem.

Please check whether there is some file like "20130110-210040-aamailserver.exe-45341.dmp" in the dump folder. If there is, please zip the dump folder and send it to us.

### 13.14 AAMail Reverse DNS

### 1. What is reverse DNS?

For example, "test@yaozhi.cn" sends an email to "hi@163.com".

Firstly, after 163 mail server receiving this email, and check the header document of the email, which will tell you this email was sent via which IP address.

Then, 163 mail server will reverse DNS according to this IP address. If the result shows that this IP address is corresponding to the domain name of "yaozhi.cn", then 163 mail server will accept this email. Otherwise, 163 mail server will reject it.

#### 2. Why you need to reverse DNS?

2.1 To improve the success rate of sending mails.

If you do not reverse DNS, then the mail server, such as Sina, will reject the mails which were sent from this domain. Even if it is able to send mails, these mails will be likely to be

sent to the "Spam".

2.2 To improve the ability of anti-spam.

Currently, most of the spammers use dynamic IP address or unregistered domain name to send spams to avoid tracking. So if the mail server has made "reverse DNS" records, then it can reject the mails which were sent from dynamic IP and the unregistered domain name, therefore, it greatly reduced the amount of spams.

#### 3. How to set reverse DNS?

Contact the IP provider (if your IP is provided by the telecommunications, then contact them. If your server is hosted, then contact the server hosting provider) to make reverse DNS records for your IP. Normally, reverse resolve your IP as your mail server corresponding mx record.

### 13.15 Why AAMail Service Cannot be Started

When AAMail service did not start, it will not be able to receive and send mails. The interface of AAMail service stopped (Figure 1-1).

ሃ AAMail Server 5.0.20130818 (Trial version will expire after 42 days)								
Operation Account Tool Setting	ıs <u>H</u> elp							
🛛 🚨 Account 🛛 Group 🕥 Doi	main 🕴 💮 Service 🛛 💥 S	Settings 🛛 📥 P	Purchase 🔀	Shutdown				
Account Status	Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume
🛨 🌖 test.com	🗇 everyone@test.com	everyone		Group	(12)			[-1]
	♣ 1@test.com	1		Account	5/5	94.4M	9.2%	1024M
	♣ 2@test.com	2		Account	5/5	94.4M	9.2%	1024M
	🚨 a@test.com	а		Account	6/6	94.4M	9.2%	1024M
	🊨 admin@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin	11/11	138.8M	6.8%	[-1]
	🊨 an@test.com	en		Account	5/5	94.4M	9.2%	1024M
	▲ as@test.com	as		Account	5/5	94.4M	9.2%	1024M
	🚨 en@test.com	en		Account	5/5	94.4M	9.2%	1024M
	🊨 in@test.com	in		Account	5/5	94.4M	9.2%	1024M
	▲ on@test.com	on		Account	5/5	94.4M	9.2%	1024M
	🊨 postmaster@test.com	Postmaster		Account	10/10	138.8M	6.8%	[-1]
	🚨 un@test.com	un		Account	5/5	94.4M	9.2%	1024M
	♣ wn@test.com	wn		Account	5/5	94.4M	9.2%	1024M
[03:34:21]-[System] Ver=5.0.2013081 [03:43:30]-[System] Services: Installer	<u>8, Win2003[</u> 32] - Access, Wi 1, Stopped <mark>1</mark>	elcome!						*
103-42-115 sustem1 JetWess (Installed, Stopped) 103-42-115 sustem1 JetWess (Installed, Stopped)								
System (SMTP) POP3 Remote Outgoing Incoming								
Ready Total=13	© Ready Total=13 2002-03-06 03:43:30							

Figure 1-1

In the above figure, there is a "[?]" after "Services", which means that AAMail service failed to start.

The steps of successfully starting AAMail service are as follows.

- 1) Close AAMail main interface and stop the process, and then restart AAMail.
- 2) Clear sendings. For details, please refer to "Clear sendings".
- 3) If you have installed 360 antivirus software on your server, please uninstall it, and then restart AAMail.
- 4) Check dependence. Please refer to the following "Service Dependence".
- 5) Enable the interface mode. Please refer to the following "Enable AAMail Interface Mode".
- 1. Service Dependence

If you still can not start AAMail service after operated the above steps, then please check whether the dependence is correct.

The steps to check the dependence are as follows.

- 1) Click "Start" -> "Administrative Tools" -> "Services".
- 2) In the "Services" dialog box, double click the "MSSQLServer" (Figure 1-2).



Figure 1-2

 In the pop up "MSSQLServer Properties (Local Computer)" dialog box, click the "Dependencies" tab, in the "The following system components depend on this service" details pane, "AAMailServer" depends on "MSSQLServer" service (Figure 1-3).

	? >
General   Log On   Recovery Dependencies	
Some services depend on other services, system drivers or load groups. If a system component is stopped, or is not running prop dependent services can be affected.	order erly,
MSSQLSERVER	
Ihis service depends on the following system components:	
The following system components depend on this service:	
The following system components depend on this service:	
The following system components depend on this service:  AAMailServer  SQLSERVERAGENT	
The following system components depend on this service:	
The following system components depend on this service:	
The following system components depend on this service:	
The following system components depend on this service:	
The following system components depend on this service:  AAMailServer  SQLSERVERAGENT	

Figure 1-3

- 4) In the "Services" dialog box, double click the "AAMailServer" service.
- 5) In the pop up "AAMailServer Properties (Local Computer)" dialog box, click the "Dependencies" tab, in the "This service depends on the following system components" details pane, "MSSQLServer" service depends on "AAMailServer" component (Figure 1-4).

AAMailServer Properties (Local Computer)	? ×
General Log On Recovery Dependencies	
Some services depend on other services, system drivers or load order groups. If a system component is stopped, or is not running properly, dependent services can be affected.	
AAMailServer	
Ihis service depends on the following system components:	
TE MSSQLSERVER	
The following system components depend on this service:	
OK Cancel	ply

Figure 1-4

"Figure 1-3 and Figure 1-4" show that "MSSQLServer" service and "AAMailServer" component's dependencies are correct.

If the dependencies between "MSSQLServer" service and "AAMailServer" component are inconsistent, then AAMail service will not be started.

1.1 Modify Dependence Name

If in the "Service manager" dialog box, the dependence name and database are inconsistent, click the "Service dependence" combo box, and select the correct dependence name.

The specific steps are as follows.

- 1) In AAMail main interface, on the toolbar, click "Service".
- It will pop up the "Service manager" dialog box, and then click the "Service dependence" combo box, and select the correct dependence name. Finally, click the "Start" button (Figure 1-5).

Service man	ager			×
Ø	AAMail run as Wi Service=Installe	indows service. d stopped, Status=9	Stopped.	
Service	Service name A4	MailServer		J
	<u>S</u> tart Install	Stop <u>R</u> emove	Restart <u>C</u> lose	

Figure 1-5

If you are using Access database or your database is not on the machine, then you can leave the "Service dependence" combo box in blank.

Note: If you modified AAMailserver's "Service" to "Interface Mode", after you started the "Interface Mode", once you turn off the computer, then the client can not connect to the server, then the client software can not send and receive mail.

### 2. Enable AAMail Interface Mode

This is a temporary solution to help users continue to use AAMail mail server.

Note: If you modified AAMailserver's "Service" to "Interface Mode", after you started the "Interface Mode", once you turn off the computer, then the client can not connect to the server, then the client software can not send and receive mail.

The steps to enable AAMail interface mode are as follows.

1) In "C:\AAMail\data" folder, double click the "mailserver.ini" configuration file (Figure 1-6).

🗁 C:\AAMail\data		
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help	
🌀 Back 👻 🕤 👻 🏂 🔎 Search 🌔	🏷 Folders 🛛 🕼 🍞 🗙 🏷 🛄 🕇	
Address 🛅 C:\AAMail\data		💌 🄁 Go
	logs	
mail	mailserver.ini Configuration Settings 4 KB	
webmailfso.txt Text Document 0 KB		
5 objects	3,20 KE	) 🚽 My Computer 🅢

Figure 1-6

2) It will open the "mailserver.ini - Notepad", under the "[System]", add "RunAsService=0" and "StartService=1" (Figure 1-7).

🝺 mailserver.ini - Notepad	
<u>File Edit Format View Help</u>	
[System] RunAsService=0 StartService=1 PortSmtp=25 PortPop3=110 PortAdmn=8025 DaysTrashMailbox=30 DaysSpamMailbox=30 UnlimitedBoxsize=2048	
PasswordMinLength=0 NextTryPOP3Remote=5 POP3RemoteMaxOnce=10 FailedMaxTries=3 NextTryInterval=10 SMTPMaxSize=512 SMTPMaxRcpt=1024 SMTPMaxSend=500 Ports2nd=0 ESMTPFlag=1 HelloString=%Domain%	
PasswordLockEnable=0 AutoTrimExcel=0 SendMailThread=20 Pop3RemoteThread=5	•



If you still can not solve the problem even used all of the above methods, please check "AAMail\dump" folder to see whether there is a file like "20130110-210040aamailserver.exe-45341.dmp". If there is, please zip the dump folder and send it to "support@youngzsoft.net", and we will help you solve this problem in time.

### 13.16 Check the Account and Attachment

If you upgraded AAMail from the old version to the earliest AAMail 5.0, when you import the attachment, it may not been decoded, which may make you unable to open the attachment while using Webmail to read mails. For this situation, we have developed a restore function.

When you upgraded from AAMail old version to AAMail 5.0 (20130115) or later version, it will not have this problem.

The specific steps are as follows.

1) In AAMail main interface, on the "Operation" menu, click the "Upgrade" (Figure 1-1).

<b>()</b> A	AMail Server 5.0.201	30501 (	Trial version will expire afte	r 0 days)					_	• 🗙
Оре	eration Account	Tool 3	Settings Help							
2	Refresh		Domain 🛛 🎡 Service	🔀 Settings	🚖 Purchase	💥 Shutdowr	ı			
<b>E</b>	Service		Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume
	Log analysis		🖉 everyone@test.com	everyone		Group	(4)			[-1]
	Tenert from file		🛛 🚨 admin@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	Import from file		📲 🚨 mimosa@test.com	Mimosa		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
T	Upgrade		🛛 🚨 postmaster@test.com	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	System backup System restore		Support@test.com	sylvia		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
⋗	Hide Hide & lock	Esc								
×	Shutdown	F12	_							
			•							Þ.
(10:02:51){System} Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome! (10:03:10){System} Services: NOT installed, Stopped! (10:02:51){System} LAN=172.16.36.2, 192.168.1.126, 192.168.101.1, 192.168.107.1										
										Ŧ
∖ Sy	istem ζ SMTP λ	РОРЗ	$\lambda$ Remote $\lambda$ Outgoing $\lambda$ Inc	oming /						
۲	Ready Total=5							201	3-08-23	10:03:10

Figure 1-1

 In the pop up "Upgrade wizard - Select task" dialog box, click the "Upgrade" combo box, and select "Verify account messages and attachments", and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1 - 2).

Upgrade wizard
Step 1/3. Select task All upgrade task is safe for your old data. Please select upgrade task.
Upgrade from AAMail 3.99 Upgrade from AAMail 3.99 Upgrade from AAMail 4.2x Upgrade from CMailServer 5.2+ All da Upgrade from Access database to SQL Server Verify account messages and attachments Store all mails into public tables
Back Next Cancel

Figure 1-2

3) In the pop up "Upgrade wizard - Specify parameters" dialog box, enter the account you want to test, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-3).

Upgrade wizard
Step 2/3. Specify parameters Upgrade: Verify account messages and attachments. Will repair those problem messages with attachments.
Check (empty for check all accounts) Configure
Back Next Cancel

Figure 1-3

If the "Check" edit box is "empty", it means to check all accounts' messages and attachments. If you want to check an account's messages and attachments, in the "Check" edit box, enter the full name of the account (such as "admin@yaozhi.com").

4) In the pop up "Upgrade wizard - Go upgrade" dialog box, click the "Start" button (Figure 1-4).

Upgrade wizard	
Step 3/3. Go upgrade Upgrade pr Will repair t	ocess depends on data volume. hose problem messages with attachments.
Volume Progress Information Imported	(Accounts=5, Mails=4) 0% Ready. (Accounts=0, Mails=0)
	Back Start Cancel

Figure 1-4

5) After the check is complete, click the "Close" button to close the checking tool.

# 13.17 How to Start AAMail in NT Service

The steps of starting AAMail service are as follows.

1) In AAMail main interface, on the toolbar, click the "Service" (Figure 1-1).

2 AAMail Server 5.0.2013050	1 (Trial ver	sion will expir	e after 0 days	)					
Operation Account Tool	Settings	Help	-						
🔒 Account 💿 Group 🕥	Domain	Service	🔀 Settings	🚔 Purcha	ase 💢 Shutd	own			
Account Status Account Status © test.com © youngzsoft.com	Comain     Account     Count     Count     Count     Seles@     Sales@     Sales@	Service ne@test.com 2test.com test.com	Settings User name everyone Administrator sales 28 28	epartment	ase 🔀 Shutd Type Group Domain admin Manager Staff	lown Inbox/All (3) 2/2 1/1 1/1	Used 0.1M 0.1M 0.1M	Ratio 0.1% 0.1% 0.1%	Volume [-1] [-1] 1024M 1024M
[15:51:57]-[System] Ver=5.0.2013050 [15:51:57]-[System] Services: SendM [15:51:57]-[System] LAN=132.168.1.1 System & SMTP & POP3 & Ready Total=4	1, Win7[64] ail(20), POP3 05, 192.168 Remote	· Access, Welco Remote(5), Adm 101.1, 192.168. Outgoing \ Inco	mel in=8025, POP3=" 107.1 ming /	110, SMTP1=2	25, SMTP2=0		2013-	08-29 1	5:52:04

Figure 1-1

2) In the pop up "Service manager" dialog box, click the "Start" button (Figure 1-2).

AAMail run a Service=Inst	s Windows service. alled stopped, Status=St	opped.	
Service name Service dependence	AAMailServer		]
Start	Stop	Restart	
Install	Remove	Close	

Figure 1-2

3) AAMail service is running normally (Figure 1-3).

AAMail run a Service=Insi	s Windows service. talled running, Status=R	lunning.	
Service name	AAMailServer		
Service dependence			-
Start	Stop	Restart	
Install	Bemove	Close	

Figure 1-3

If the service has not installed, please click the "Install" button. If the service failed to start, please refer to "<u>Why AAMail Service Cannot be Started</u>".

### 13.18 How to Restore MDAC

If the system "MDAC" component has not been installed or the "MDAC" has problems, it will cause AAMail service failed to start.

Note: When 360 antivirus software optimizing the registry, it may remove some components like "MDAC" components, which cause AAMail can not run normally. Therefore, we do not recommend you use 360 antivirus software on the server.

Before installing MDAC components, you need to prepare i386 installation package (Note: If the OS is different, so is the i386 installation package).

There are two methods of getting "i386 installation package".

- 1) Read the "i386" file from the "System Disc".
- 2) Download the "i386" file from the Internet.

The method of restoring MDAC is as follows.

- Click the "Start" button, in the "Run" edit box, type "%windir%\inf", and then press the "Enter" key.
- 2) It will open the "C:\WINDOWS\inf" folder (or you can open the "C:\WINDOWS\inf" folder in Drive C directly), and then find the "mdac.inf" file.
- 3) Right click the "mdac.inf" file, and select "Install" (Figure 1-1).
| C:\WINDOWS\inf                                    |                            |   | _ 🗆 🗵  |
|---|----------------------------|---|--------|
| <u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites | <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp |   | 2      |
| 🔇 Back 🝷 🕥 👻 🥬 🔎 Se                               | arch 🌔 Folders             | 🖻 🌶 🗙 🍤 🛄 🛛   |        |
| Address 🗁 C:\WINDOWS\inf                          |                            |   | 💌 🄁 Go |
| mdac.inf<br>Setup Information<br>12 KB<br>Open    | <                          | <b>mdac.PNF</b><br>Precompiled Setup Information<br>17 KB | •      |
| Print<br>Open With                                | 1                          | mdm3com.PNF<br>Precompiled Setup Information<br>96 KB     |        |
| Send To   | 1                          | mdm3cpcm.PNF<br>Precompiled Setup Information<br>48 KB    |        |
| Create Shortcut<br>Delete                         | 1                          | mdm3mini.PNF<br>Precompiled Setup Information<br>98 KB    |        |
| Rena <u>m</u> e<br>P <u>r</u> operties            | 1                          | mdm656n5.PNF<br>Precompiled Setup Information<br>56 KB    |        |
| mdm5674a.inf<br>Setup Information<br>33 KB        | 1                          | mdm5674a.PNF<br>Precompiled Setup Information<br>43 KB    | •      |
| Creates shortcuts to the selected i               | items.                     |   | 1.     |

Figure 1-1

4) In the pop up "Files Needed" dialog box, click the "Browse..." button, and then select the "Prompt" file (Figure 1-2).

### igure 1-2

During the installation process, it will prompt to install "dao360.dll", "MDACRdMe.htm", "mssoap1.dll", "wisc10.dll", "mssoapr.dll" and so on.

If you don't have "i386 installation package", you can find files in the following three folders (This operation is more complex and easy to make mistakes):

"C:\Program Files\Common Files\System" folder.

"C:\Program Files\Common Files\System\msadc" folder.

"C:\Program Files\Common Files\System\ado" folder.

You may not be able to find the "MDACRdMe.htm" file which is in fact a useless junk file. You can create an "MDACRdMe.htm" empty file in "C:\Program Files\Common Files\System\ado" folder.

5) After the above operations are complete, please <u>restart the server</u>.

### Tips:

You can use the system inbuilt "search" function to locate these files quickly (Figure 1-3).



Figure 1-3

Firstly, in the "All or part of the file name" and "A word or phrase in the file" edit boxes, enter the file or folder you want to search. Then click the "Search" combo box, and select the Drive "C". Finally, click the "Search" button. You can search out the desired file or folder, unless the file or folder does not exist.

After the restore is complete, please restart AAMail.

# 13.19 Autorun AAMail When Windows Startup

After started Windows operating system, the methods of autorun AAMail are as follows.

- 1) In AAMail main interface, on the toolbar, click the "Settings".
- 2) In the pop up "Server settings" dialog box, select the "Autorun when Windows startup" check box, and then click the "OK" button (Figure 1-1).

Server settings	×
General Account Mail Network Webmail Logs Advanced	
Autorun when Windows startup	
Auto minimized after autorun	
Click for help	
Service name AAMailServer	
Language English	

Figure 1-1

After operated according to the above method, AAMail will autorun when Windows startup.

#### Modify the Registry Editor

If AAMail can not autorun when Windows startup according to the above method, please follow the instructions below.

### 1. Check AAMail Server

- 1) Click the "Start" button, in the "Run" edit box, enter "regedit", and then press the "Enter" key, it will open the "Registry Editor" window.
- 2) In the "Registry Editor", navigate to "HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE/Software/Microsoft/Windows/Run/AAMailServer". If there is no "AAMailServer" key in the "Run" node, then AAMail is certainly not able to autorun when Windows startup (Figure 1-2).

💣 R	egist	ry Edit	or						
Eile	<u>E</u> dit	⊻iew	F <u>a</u> vorites	<u>H</u> elp					
			IPConfTSP			Name	Туре		Data
		÷	MS-DOS En	nulation		👜 (Default)	REG_SZ		(value not set)
		÷	Nİs	2		💩 VMware Tools	REG_SZ		"C:\Program File
			OptimalLay	out		WMware User Pro	REG SZ		"C:\Program File
		÷	policies			a AAMailServer	REG_SZ		"C:\AAMail\aam
			R2Setup						
		±	Reinstall						
			Reliability						
			Run						
			RunOnce						
			RUNONCEE:	X					
			ServerUUE	5E					
			ShavedDila						
			Shall Exten	sions					
			ShellCompa	sions stibilito					
			ShellScrap	scionicy					
			ShellServic	e∩hiectD					
			SideBySide	000,000					
		÷	Syncmar						
		÷	Telenhony						
		÷	Themes						
		17			그				
<u> </u>									
My Co	omput	er\HKE	LOCAL_M	ACHINE\S	OFTV	VARE\Microsoft\Windows\	CurrentVersion	i(Run	11.

Figure 1-2

#### 2. Modify the Run Permissions

If in the "Registry Editor", you didn't find the "AAMailServer" key, then you need to check the "Run" node permissions.

1) Right click "Run" and select the "Permissions...", it will pop up "Permissions for Run" dialog box (Figure 1-3).

Permissions for Run		? ×					
Security							
<u>G</u> roup or user names:	T-R2-VAdministra	tors)					
Everyone							
Power Users (WIN2003-ENT	-R2-\Power Use	(8) ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••					
	A <u>d</u> d	<u>R</u> emove					
Permissions for Power Users	Allow	Deny					
Full Control Read							
Special Permissions							
For special permissions or for advanced settings, <u>Advanced</u>							
OK	Cancel	Apply					

Figure 1-3

- 2) Click the "Add" button in Figure 1-3.
- 3) In the pop up "Select Users or Groups" dialog box, click the "Advanced" button (Figure 1-4).

Permissions for Run	?×	
Select Users or Groups		<u>? ×</u>
Select this object type:		
Users, Groups, or Built-in security principals		Object Types
Erom this location:		
WIN2003-ENT-R2-		Locations
Enter the object names to select ( <u>examples</u> ):		
		Check Names
	_	
Advanced	OK	Cancel

Figure 1-4

4) In the pop up "Select Users or Groups" dialog box, click the "Find Now" button, then

click "Everyone" on the "Search results" list box. Finally, click the "OK" button (Figure 1-5).

elect Users or G	roups		<u>? ×</u>
Select this object ty	уре:		
Users, Groups, or	Built-in security princip	pals	<u>O</u> bject Types
From this location:			
WIN2003-ENT-R2	2-		Locations
Common Queries			
Name:	Starts with 🔽		<u>C</u> olumns
		<u> </u>	Find Now
Description:	Starts with 💌 📔		Pind Now
Disabled ac	counts		Stop
Non expiring	g password		
Days since last	logon: 🔽		■ <sup>3</sup>
Search res <u>u</u> lts:			OK Cancel
Name (RDN)	In Folder		
Authenticated			
🕵 Backup Oper	WIN2003-ENT		
BATCH			
DIALUP			
Distributed C	WIN2003-ENT		
Everyone		(2)	
C.u.s.	V/INDOOD ENT		
🚾 Guest	WIN2003-ENT		
Guest Guests	WIN2003-ENT		

Figure 1-5

5) In the "Select Users or Groups" dialog box, click the "OK" button to save the settings (Figure 1-6).

Permissions for Run	?×
Select Users or Groups	<u>? ×</u>
Select this object type:	
Users, Groups, or Built-in security principals	Object Types
Erom this location:	
WIN2003-ENT-R2-	Locations
Enter the object names to select ( <u>examples)</u> :	
Everyone	<u>C</u> heck Names
Advanced	OK Cancel

Figure 1-6

#### 3. AAMail Settings

In AAMail "Server settings" dialog box, uncheck the "Autorun when Windows startup" check box, and then click the "OK" button. Select the "Autorun when Windows startup" check box, and then click the "OK" button.

This makes it possible to register "AAMailServer" in the "Registry Editor".

### 13.20 About Noreply Account

What is noreply mailbox? Noreply is a system reserved account. Normally, it is used to send bounce, auto reply, auto forward mail and so on. If a mailbox sends mail failed, AAMail will send a bounce to this mailbox with noreply account. In the bounce, it generally will include the reasons, which offered a direction for the administrator to analyze the problem. And this is a normal phenomenon.

If there is something like "noreply@maifom.null (127.0.0.1)", it indicates that someone is sending mails with an empty mail account, that is, "MAILFROM: <>".

Usually, this is because your mailbox's password is too simple, it will be cracked by others very easily. Then, plenty of spams will be sent to you, and simply, your server was attacked. Because you need to send and receive mails to and from other mailboxes in the Internet, the port 25 of the mail server system needs to be opened to the entire Internet, Which provides opportunities for some spammers to use their tools to scan and crack the email passwords by brute force, thus obtaining the sending permission, and sending a lot of spams via your mail server. Then, in AAMail "Mail sending" list (click the "Status" on the left side of AAMail main interface), you will see hundreds of mails are constantly sending out, which will certainly cause the server congestion, and then the mail server can not receive and send mails normally. **Solution:** 

- 1) Modify all the accounts' passwords to complex ones, such as "letters + numbers + special symbols", and the password length is not less than 8.
- 2) Prevent "noreply" account from sending mails. But Outlook will not be able to send the receipt.

The steps about how to prevent "noreply" account from sending mails are as follows.

1) In AAMail main interface, on the toolbar, click the "Settings" (Figure 1-1).

🥹 AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)									
Operation Account Tool Settings Help									
🛿 🚨 Account 🔄 Group 🕠 Domain 🛛 🎨 Service 🔀 Settings 📄 🏝 Purchase 🗶 Shutdown									
Account Status	Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume	
🕀 🕥 test.com	🗇 everyone@test.com	everyone		Group	(4)			[-1]	
	▲ admin@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]	
	🊨 mimosa@test.com	Mimosa		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M	
	🊨 postmaster@test.com	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]	
	support@test.com	sylvia		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M	
	•							Þ	
[13:14:15]-[Sustem] Ver=5.0.2013050	1 Win7[64] - Access Welco	mel							
[15:23:21]-[System] Services: NOT in	stalled, Stopped!								
[13:14:15]-[System] LAN=172.16.36.2	2, 192.168.1.126, 192.168.10	1.1, 192.168.10	07.1						
								*	
System ζ SMTP χ PDP3 χ	Remote $\lambda$ Uutgoing $\lambda$ Inco	oming/							
Ready Total=5						201	3-08-22	15:23:22	

Figure 1-1

2) In the pop up "Server settings" dialog box, click the "Network" tab, uncheck the "SMTP allow empty MAILFROM command (<>)" check box (Figure 1-2).

Server settings	X
General Account Mail Network Webmail Logs Advanced	
SMTP port 25 2nd SMTP port 0 Click for help POP3 port 110 Admin port 8	025
SMTP HELO %Domain%	
SMTP local exchange need authentication.	
SMTP allow empty MAILFROM command (<>).	
Lock IP 1 minutes after password fail 5 times.	
ОК	Cancel

Figure 1-2

# 13.21 Reference Guide of Sending and Receiving

## Speed

If the sending and receiving speed of mail server is very slow, you can judge and solve this problem according to the following instructions.

- 1) Network problem.
- 2) The server is too old.
- In the "Mail sending", there are a lot of mails waiting to be sent, which will cause send delays. For details, please refer to "<u>Clear Sendings</u>".
- If the value in the "Send mail thread number" edit box was modified from the original "20" to "30" or larger, then the mail server's running speed will become very slow, or even crashed. So just keep the default settings (Figure 1-1).

Server settings	×
General Account Mail Network Webmail Logs Advanced	
Send mail thread number 20	
Click for help POP3 remote thread number 5	
Allow save SMTP messages to Sent folder	
Network timeout after 60 Seconds	

Figure 1-1

5) An email was copied to all the staffs at one time (with a few megabytes to tens of megabytes attachments, or even larger). Sending these "large attachments" will affect the sending and receiving speed of the mail server.

Solution: Use the "Mail Group" function to send mails. For details, please refer to "Mail Group".

## 13.22 User Feedback

If you encountered any difficulties, please provide the following information and send it to "support@youngzsoft.net", and we will analyze the problems and provide the solutions to you as soon as possible.

Please provide the following information: Software Version: Serial number: IM: Public Network IP: Phone: Remote Desktop ID and Password: Screenshot: Description:

#### Description Case: Can not receive mails via using Webmail.

- 1) Can not receive mails in LAN, or can not receive the mails from Internet.
- 2) Whether there is any bounce message.

Note: You can also submit your questions on http://www.youngzsoft.net/submit.php.

### 13.23 Cannot Send and Receive Overseas Mails

**Problem Description:** Can not normally use AAMail to send and receive mails overseas (can receive mails but not to send; can send mails but not to receive; can not send and receive mails).

#### Solutions:

#### Method 1

Modify the SMTP and POP3 addresses to AAMail mail server's public IP address.

If you can not solve this problem after the above method, then please test whether the "SMTP and POP3" ports can be connected normally, because maybe the mail ports are disabled overseas.

Use telnet IP 25 to test whether the SMTP port is normal (such as telnet 112.53.25.65 25).

Use telnet IP 110 to test whether the POP3 port is normal.

If port "25" is disabled, you can use AAMail's 2nd SMTP port. For details, please refer to "<u>Server Settings</u>".

#### Method 2

If you can not normally use the client software, then you can use Webmail to login.

- 1) Use telnet command to test whether port 80 is normal (such as "telnet 112.53.25.65 80").
- 2) If port 80 can not be connected normally, then in the "<u>IIS Manager</u>", modify port 80 to other port (such as port 82). After the modification, you need to make port mapping in the router, for details, please refer to "<u>Enable AAMail Mail Server in Router</u>".
- 3) Use telnet command to test whether port 82 is normal.
- 4) Go to http://112.53.25.65:82/mail or http://yaozhi.com:82/mail to visit Webmail.

## **13.24 Reasons and Solutions for Bounce**

The reasons and solutions for bounce are as follows.

1. Reason: Your IP or domain name has been listed in the rbl blacklist of other party's mail server.

Solution: Contact the other party's mail server administrator to put your IP or domain name into the white list.

2. Reason: Your IP or domain name has been listed in the RBL blacklist.

Solution: Please refer to the "Solutions for IP Address Being Listed in RBL".

3. Reason: Your email address does not exist in the other part's server.

Solution: Check the specific content of the bounce message.

# 13.25 Method of Creating Two AAMail Mail Servers in

### LAN

Mail exchanges become more and more widespread and popular nowadays. The steps about how to create two mail servers in LAN are as follows.

Suppose:

Server A's domain name is "aaa.com", and its IP is "192.168.1.1".

Server B's domain name is "bbb.com", and its IP is "192.168.1.2".

- Install AAMail on server A and server B. For details, please refer to "<u>Install AAMail</u> <u>Server</u>".
- 2) On server A, navigate to "AAMail installation folder -> data -> mailserver.ini".
- In the mailserver configuration file, add "[DomainDNS] bbb.com = 192.168.1.2" (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

4) On server B, navigate to "AAMail installation folder -> data -> mailserver.ini".

5) In the mailserver configuration file, add "[DomainDNS] aaa.com = 192.168.1.1" (Figure 1-2).

mailserver.ini - Notepad	- • •
File Edit Format View Help	
HelloString=%Domain% AllowNullMailFrom=0 PasswordLockEnable=1 AutoTrimExcel=0 SendMailThread=20 Pop3RemoteThread=5 NetworkTimeout=60 SaveToSentAll=1 ISPRelayTryMode=0 ServiceName=AAMailServer	•
[Log] UpdateMailFolder=1 UpdateMailSpace=1 UpdateAttach=1 CleanOldLogsTime=2013-08-23 10:23:32 CleanOpdMailTime=2013-08-23 10:23:32 CleanOldMailTime=2013-08-23 10:23:32 LastCompactTime=2013-07-19 10:41:58 SendMailLog=0 Pop3RemoteLog=0 SmtpLog=0 Pop3Log=0 FailureNoticeLog=0 KeepLogDays=30 SentStateKeepSeconds=1994023674	
<pre>[Service] ServiceStartups=[2013-08-23 10:26:53] Succeeded! ServiceShutdown=[?] [DomainDNS] aaa.com = 192.168.1.1</pre>	

Figure 1-2

After the above steps are complete, you can send and receive mails between the two servers.

# 13.26 Solutions for Avoiding Password Being Cracked

If an account's password failed more than 5 times, AAMail system will auto lock this account's IP address for one minute, during this one minute, this computer can not login AAMail account.

This function prevents cracking AAMail mail account's password with brute force, which also improves the security of AAMail account.

The settings are as follows.

1) In AAMail main interface, on the toolbar, click the "Settings" button (Figure 1-1).

🥹 AAMail Server 5.0.20130501 (Trial version will expire after 0 days)										
Operation Account Tool Settings Help										
🧟 Account 🗇 Group 🜖 Domain   🎡 Service 🔀 Settings   🚖 Purchase 🔀 Shutdown										
Account Status	Account		User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume	
	everyone(	@test.com	everyone		Group	(4)		0.40	[-1]	
	👗 admin@te	st.com	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]	
	a mimosa@i	test.com	Mimosa		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M	
	a postmaste	r@test.com	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-]]	
	Support@r	test.com	syivia		Account	171	U. IM	0.1%	1024M	
	•								•	
[11:12:36]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130501, Win7[64] - Access, Welcome! [11:12:36]-[System] Services: SendMail(20), PDP3Remote(5), Admin=8025, PDP3=110, SMTP1=25, SMTP2=0 [11:12:36]-[System] LAN=17216 38 2, 192168 1126, 192168 1011, 192168 1071								*		
									-	
$\setminus$ System $\langle$ SMTP $\rangle$ POP3 $\rangle$	Remote 🔪 Ou	utgoing∖ Inc	:oming /							
Ready Total=5							2013	3-08-23	12:33:02	

Figure 1-1

 In the pop up "Server settings" dialog box, click the "Network" tab, and then select the "Lock IP 1 minutes after password fail 5 times" check box. Finally, click the "OK" button (Figure 1-2).

Server settings		×
General Account Mail	Network Webmail Logs Advanced	
Click for help	SMTP port 25 2nd SMTP port 0 POP3 port 110 Admin port 8025	
SMTP HELO	al exchange need authentication.	
SMTP allo	w empty MAILFROM command (<>).	
Lock IP 1	minutes after password fail 5 times.	
	OK Can	cel

Figure 1-2

After following the above steps, you can lock IP 1 minute after password failed 5 times.

#### **Reference Configuration**

In "D:\AAMail\data\mailserver.ini", under "[System]", you can configure as follows.

**"PasswordLockEnable=1":** Whether to enable the "Lock IP 1 minutes after password fail 5 times" function. Configure the value as "1" to enable this function, and "0" to disable.

"PasswordMaxTries=5": Allow how many times failed password authentication. The default value is 5 times.

**"PasswordLockMinute=1":** How long to lock IP after the password authentication failed. The default value is 1 minute.

## 13.27 Solutions for Upgrading AAMail Failed

**Reason:** In AAMail installation folder, the "data" (or "dbs") folder name was modified, which causes upgrading AAMail failed.

**Solution:** Modify the name of the folder which is used to store data to "data" (or "dbs"). **Note:** In AAMail5.0, the folder which is used to store data is called "data", while AAMail 4.26 and the previous versions were called "dbs".

### 13.28 Backup System Information

AAMail has been added a new function for system data backup, you can backup "mailserver.ini", accounts, mail folder, domains, Pop3 remote, auto filter rules, ISP relay sending, group member, auto forward rules, block list, monitor relationship, auto signature, RBL list, address book, auto reply and so on.

The backup steps are as follows.

1) In AAMail main interface, on the menu bar, click the "Operation", and then select the "System backup" (Figure 1-1).

0	AMail Server 5.0.20130501	(Trial version will expire afte	er 0 days)						• 🔀
Ope	ration Account Tool	Settings Help	8.4 - I	A					
12	Ketresh	Domain   💮 Service	🔀 Settings 🛛	Purchase	🗙 Shutdowr	1			
-	Service	Account	User name	Department	Туре	Inbox/All	Used	Ratio	Volume
	Log analysis	everyone@test.com	everyone		Group	(4)			[-1]
	Transit from 621.	📲 🚨 admin@test.com	Administrator		Domain admin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	import from file	🛛 🚨 mimosa@test.com	Mimosa		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
	Upgrade	🛛 🚨 postmaster@test.com	Postmaster		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	System backup	Support@test.com	sylvia		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	1024M
	System restore	- II							
•	Hide Esc								
	Hide & lock								
		-							
×	Shutdown F12								
_		1							
[11:1 [11:1	2:36]-[System] Ver=5.0.20130 2:36]-[System] Services: Senc	501, Win7[64] - Access, Welc  Mail(20), POP3Remote(5), Adr	ome! nin=8025, POP3	=110, SMTP1=2	5, SMTP2=0				*
[11:1	2:36]-[System] LAN=172.16.3	6.2, 192.168.1.126, 192.168.1	01.1, 192.168.10	)7.1					
									-
\ c.		\ Bemote \ Outgoing \ Inc	omina /						
1 39			oning/						42.04.22
0	Ready Total=5						201	3-08-23	13:01:32

Figure 1-1

 In the pop up "System data backup" dialog box, select the backup information. In the "Backup to" edit box, enter the backup path, and then click the "Backup" button (Figure 1-2).

System data backup		×
You could Specify ba	backup system parameters and account ckup location.	s here.
🔽 mailserver.ini	Accounts	🔽 Mail folder
📝 Domains	📝 Pop3 remote	📝 Auto filter rules
📝 ISP relay sending	📝 Group member	📝 Auto forward rules
🔽 Block list	📝 Monitor relationship	📝 Auto signature
📝 RBL list	📝 Address book	📝 Auto reply
Backup to	D:\AAMail\data\system-20130823.mdb	
	Backup Cancel	

Figure 1-2

If you only want to backup "Accounts", you can just select the "Account" check box and uncheck others.

# 13.29 SPF Anti-spam Function

SPF is a DNS record type which aims at anti-spams. It is also a TXT record for registering a domain name's IP address which is used for sending mails.

SPF is a DNS-related technology with its contents written in the txt record of DNS. MX record is used for specifying the servers of a domain name for the sender. The role of SPF is different with MX. SPF indicates which mail servers are recognized by the domain name for the recipient.

SPF is used for AAMail system to check whether the domain name matches with the IP address for the external SMTP incoming mails, so there is no need to configure it on AAMail.

If you want to configure the SPF, you need to go to domain control panel to set the related DNS record (or turn to domain name service provider for help).

#### **Reference Configuration**

In "D:\AAMail\data\mailserver.ini", under "[System]", you can configure as follows.

"AntiSpamSPF = 1": Whether to enable SPF function. The value "1" stands for enable, "0" is for disable (Figure 1-1).

mailserver.ini - Notepad	
File Edit Format View Help	
[System] AntiSpamSPF = 1 PortSmtp=25 PortPop3=110	
PortAdm=8025 AntiSpam=1 AntiSpamAction=1	
[Log] UpdateMailFolder=1 CleanOldLogsTime=2013-06-05 09:37:43 CleanSpamboxTime=2013-06-05 09:37:43 CleanOldMailTime=2013-06-05 09:37:43 LastCompactTime=2013-06-05 09:37:47 UpdateMailSpace=1 UpdateAttach=1	
[Service] ServiceStartups=[2013-06-05 09:37:47] Succeeded! ServiceShutdown=[2013	5

Figure 1-1

# 13.30 Solutions for Client Can't Send and Receive

### Mails

1) If you have created multiple domain names on AAMail, but on the client software, the

email address was not complete (For example, the full email address is "yaozhi@dbmail.com", but you entered an incomplete email address, such as "yaozhi"), then the client can not send and receive mails normally.

Solution: Enter the complete email address.

2) If there is a prompt like "online failed (code = -1)", then the client can not send and receive mails normally.

Solution: Re-register AAMail. If the problem still can not be solved, please restart the computer.

# 13.31 Send and Receive Mails via Phone

We will take Android system for example to illustrate how to use phone to send and receive mails. The steps are as follows.

- 1) Run the mail client software on the phone.
- 2) Enter the username and password, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-1).

Figure 1-1

3) Click the "POP3" button (Figure 1-2).

Figure 1-2

4) In the "POP3 server" edit box, enter the POP3 address. In the "Port" edit box, enter the port (the default port is port 110). Then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-3).

#### Figure 1-3

5) In the "SMTP server" edit box, enter the SMTP address. In the "Port" edit box, enter the port (the default port is port 25). Then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-4).

Figure 1-4

6) Configure other parameters, and then click the "Next" button (Figure 1-5).

Figure 1-5

7) After setting the account successfully, you can use the mail client on your phone to send and receive mails then (Figure 1-6).

Figure 1-6

# 13.32 Upload and Download Large Attachments

In Windows 2003 operating system, you can not upload and download large attachments. This is because that Windows 2003 allows uploading and downloading 200k files at most. If you want to upload and download large files, you must modify the "AspMaxRequestEntityAllowed" parameter in "MetaBase1.xml" file.

The steps are as follows.

- 1) Click the "Start" button, in the "Run" edit box, enter "cmd" and then press the "Enter" key.
- 2) In the pop up "Command Prompt" window, type "iisreset/stop" to stop the IIS Admin Service (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

- 3) Navigate to "C:\WINDOWS\system32\inetsrv" folder, and then open the "MetaBase1.xml" file with Notepad.
- 4) In the opened Notepad, search "AspMaxRequestEntityAllowed" field, modify the value (the default value is "204800", which means the allowed uploading and downloading size is 200K) (Figure 1-2).

<b>  </b> N	1etaB	ase1.xm	l - Nol	tepad		
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit	F <u>o</u> rmat	<u>V</u> iew	<u>H</u> elp		
			נ נ נ נ נ	AspDis AspEna AspEna AspEna AspEna AspErr AspExce AspExce AspLCI AspLCI	skTemplateCacheDirectory="%windir%\system3; ableApplicationRestart="TRUE" ableAspHtmlFallback="FALSE" ableChunkedEncoding="TRUE" ableTypelibCache="TRUE" "orsTONTLog="FALSE" ceptionCatchEnable="TRUE" ecuteInMTA="0" epSessionIDSecure="0" ID="2048" gErrorRequests="TRUE" coiskTemplateCacheEiles="2000"	2∖inetsr <b>_</b>
			נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ נ	AS pMax As pProd As pQue As pRec As pRec As pScr As pScr As pScr As pScr As pScr As pScr	<pre>xRequestEntityAllowed="204800" DressonThreadMax="25" eueConnectionTestTime="3" eueTimeout="4294967295" questQueueMax="3000" honEndAnonymously="TRUE" honEndAnonymously="TRUE" honEndAnonymously="TRUE" honEndAnonymously="TRUE" hiptErrorSentToBrowser="TRUE" hiptErrorSentToBrowser="TRUE" hiptFileCacheSize="500" hiptFileCacheSize="500" hiptLanguage="VBScript" hiptTimeout="90" ssionMax="4294967295"</pre>	server
┛						• //

#### Figure 1-2

Note: In IIS 6 global configuration, the allowed maximum upload size is 4 GB.

"102400" means"100K", "1024000" means "1M". So "20M" is "1024000\*20=20480000".

5) In the "Command Prompt" window, type "iisreset", and then restart the IIS service.

### 13.33 RBL Setting Method

RBL (Realtime Blackhole List) is a blacklist. All of the IP addresses or domain names in this list have sent spams to other mailboxes before.

If A has applied RBL service, and B's IP was listed in the RBL list, when B sends mails to A, A will reject these mails.

In AAMail "<u>Anti-spam settings</u>" dialog box, if you enable all RBL services and set strict RBL rules, you may also receive mails failed.

We recommend enable the following 5 RBL services.

en.spamhaus.org

cblless.anti-spam.org.cn

dnsbl.sorbs.net

bl.spamcop.net

b.barracudacentral.org

nti-spam settings General RBL list IF	<sup>,</sup> block li	st Address block list		
9		RBL	Valid	
Click for hole	01	zen.spamhaus.org	YES	
Click for help	02	cbl.anti-spam.org.cn	YES	
- Add	03	bl.spamcop.net	YES	
	04	dnsbl.sorbs.net	YES	
🥖 <u>M</u> odify	05	blacklist.spambag.org	-	
	06	bl.csma.biz		
Delete	07	b.barracudacentral.org	YES	
			ок	Cancel

Figure 1-1

#### If the Mail Was Misjudged to Be the Spam, What Should I Do?

If you find that the mail was misjudged to be the spam, you can add the other party's server IP to "IP white list", or add its domain name to "address white list".

# If My Server IP Was Listed in RBL Anti-spam Black List, How to Remove My Server IP from RBL?

Sometimes, your server IP may be listed to one RBL international anti-spam organization black list. If the server IP was listed in RBL black list, the other server may reject your emails. For details about how to remove your IP from RBL, please refer to "<u>Solution for IP</u> <u>Address Being Listed to RBL Black List</u>".

# 13.34 Solutions for "ERR IP/blocklist rejected" Error

When there is "-ERR IP/blocklist rejected 58.216.235.63" error, then you can not send and receive mails normally, but after a minute, it backs to a normal status. Reason:

You have enabled the "Lock IP 1 minutes after password fail 5 times" function. When IP (58.216.235.63) account and password authentication failed, AAMail server will reject IP (58.216.235.63) connection.

Solution:

Method 1: Check whether the username and password are correct or not.

Method 2: Uncheck the "Lock IP 1 minutes after password fail 5 times" check box. For details, please refer to "<u>Solutions for Avoiding Password Being Cracked</u>".

Note: If your company sends and receives mails with the same IP address, then please

do not enable "Lock IP 1 minutes after password fail 5 times" function to avoid the entire company can not send and receive mails if the authentication failed.

# 13.35 Method of Checking Mails on Server

The steps about how to check mails and attachments on the server without using Webmail, Outlook and other tools are as follows.

1) Open the "C:\AAMail\data\mail" folder. In "mail" folder, the "000000-999999" folders are used to store mails and attachments of the accounts.

🗁 C:\AAMail\	\data\mail				_ 🗆 🗵
<u>Eile E</u> dit	<u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> o	ools <u>H</u> elp			
🔾 Back 👻 🌔	🕥 👻 🤣 📔 🔎 Searc	h 🜔 Folders 🛛	🕸 🌫 🔀	•	
Address 🛅 C	:\AAMail\data\mail				💌 🄁 Go
Name 🔺		Size	Туре	Date Modified	Attributes 🔺
000000			File Folder	06/03/2002 03	3:35
000001			File Folder	05/03/2002 08	3:05
000002			File Folder	06/03/2002 03	3:34
000003			File Folder	06/03/2002 02	2:01
000004			File Folder	06/03/2002 02	2:01
000005			File Folder	06/03/2002 02	2:01
000006			File Folder	06/03/2002 03	3:10
000007			File Folder	06/03/2002 02	2:01
600000 🛅			File Folder	06/03/2002 02	2:01
000009			File Folder	06/03/2002 02	2:01
000010			File Folder	06/03/2002 02	2:01
000011			File Folder	06/03/2002 02	2:01
000012			File Folder	06/03/2002 02	2:01
000013			File Folder	06/03/2002 02	2:01
<u></u> 9999999			File Folder	03/03/2002 07	7:31
🗖 🚾 accessidap.	.mdb	908 KB	MDB File	06/03/2002 04	H03 A
acs000001.	.mdb	152 KB	MDB File	06/03/2002 03	3:35 A 🔤
	mdh	150 /0	MOR Eila	04/09/2002 03	
31 objects				4,80 MB 🛛 😼 My	Computer

Figure 1-1

2) Double click "0000001" folder (we take "0000001" folder for example). The ".txt" files are mail files, and the ".dat" files are attachment files.

🗁 C:\AAMail\data\mail\000001	l			_ 🗆 🗡
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> i	ools <u>H</u> elp			A
🔇 Back 👻 🕤 👻 🏂 Searc	h 🌔 Folders 🛛 🛛	🕏 🅑 🗙 🗳		
Address 🛅 C:\AAMail\data\mail\00	0001			💌 🄁 Go
Name 🔺	Size	Туре	Date Modified	Attributes 🔺
E 2002030400000004.txt	1 KB	Text Document	04/03/2002 01:55	A
🖹 200203040000005.txt	1 KB	Text Document	04/03/2002 01:58	A
🖹 200203040000008.txt	8.057 KB	Text Document	04/03/2002 01:59	A
🖬 200203040000008_0000.dat	5.887 KB	DAT File	04/03/2002 01:59	A
🖹 2002030400000012.txt	29.307 KB	Text Document	04/03/2002 02:00	A
🖬 2002030400000012_0000.dat	5.887 KB	DAT File	04/03/2002 02:00	A
🖬 2002030400000012_0001.dat	5.887 KB	DAT File	04/03/2002 02:00	A
🖬 2002030400000012_0002.dat	5.887 KB	DAT File	04/03/2002 02:00	A
🖬 2002030400000012_0003.dat	3.757 KB	DAT File	04/03/2002 02:00	A
🗐 200203050000042.txt	32.223 KB	Text Document	05/03/2002 08:04	A
🖬 200203050000042_0000.dat	5.887 KB	DAT File	05/03/2002 08:05	A
🖬 200203050000042_0001.dat	5.887 KB	DAT File	05/03/2002 08:05	A
🖻 200203050000042_0002.dat	5.887 KB	DAT File	05/03/2002 08:05	Α
🖬 200203050000042_0003.dat	5.887 KB	DAT File	05/03/2002 08:05	A
🗐 200203060000056.txt	16.113 KB	Text Document	06/03/2002 03:34	A
🖬 200203060000056_0000.dat	5.887 KB	DAT File	06/03/2002 03:35	A
🖬 200203060000056_0001.dat	1 KB	DAT File	06/03/2002 03:35	Α
■ 200202060000056_0002 dot	1 //D	DAT Eila	06/09/2002 02/25	<b>_</b>
23 objects			144 MB 😔 My Com	puter //

Figure 1-2

3) Copy the file and then open it (such as "2002030400000004.txt") (in order to avoid damaging the original file). Delete the top two blank lines. Finally, save the file.

#### 📕 Copy of 2002030400000004.txt - Notepad

<u>File Edit Format View Help</u>

Die Fait ( Quinte Ten Tob	
	<u></u>
X-Priority: 3	-
Received: from webuser([127.0.0.1]) by localhost with AAMail 5.0.20130811; Thu, 29 Aug 2013 15:11:33 +0800 Message-ID: <002_010597.002849@so13082900000001> MIME-version: 1.0 From: noreply@qq.com To: postmaster@qq.com Subject: welcome to AAMail Server! Date: Thu, 29 Aug 2013 15:11:33 +0800 Content-Type: text/plain; 	
Dear Postmaster,	
welcome to AAMail Server! You could visit http://www.aamailsoft.com for latest information.	
AAm@ilsoft.com support@aamailsoft.com	

Figure 1-3

4) Modify the "200203040000004.txt" file format to ".eml".

😂 C:\AAMail\data\mail\000001					
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp	)				
Ele Edit View Favorites Jools Help					
Address 🗁 C:\AAMail\data\mail\000001					-
Name 🔺	Size	Туре	Date Modified	Attributes	
200203040000004.txt	1 KB	Text Document	8/29/2013 3:11 PM	А	
Copy of 200203040000004.eml	1 KB	Outlook Express Ma	8/29/2013 3:11 PM	А	
<u> </u>					

Figure 1-4

5) Double click "200203040000004.eml" file, and then you can see the mail and attachment.





## 13.36 It Is Slow When Remote Receiving Mails

#### Problem

You have set the "POP3 retrieve" function, but AAMail mail system cannot receive mails (or only a part of the mails can be received). To receive all mails, you have to manually right click the account, and then select "POP3 retrieve".

#### Reasons

In its default settings, AAMail receives mails for each account in turns with 5 threads, and receives only 10 mails each time to avoid an account receive too much mails.

If many accounts have set "POP3 retrieve" function, AAMail system will receive mails for each account in order. If the account is listed in the end of the account list, it may seem like that this account cannot receive mails timely.

When you manually receive mails, AAMail system will receive mails for this account immediately, rather than waiting for the system to receive mails in turns.

#### Solutions

Improve the receiving ability of a single account. Manually modify

"AAMail\data\mailserver.ini" parameters. If you did not find the two-line parameters below, please manually add them to the file (Figure 1-1). After the modification complete, please restart the mail service in the backstage.

[System]

POP3RemoteMaxOnce=50 (take "50" for example) Pop3RemoteThread=10 (take "10" for example)

🗍 mailserver.ini - Notepad	×
File Edit Format View Help	
DatabaseName=sqlmail AuthSSPI=0 UserId=sa AccountTable=1 ServerOnRemote=0 DatabasePort=1433	*
[System] PortSmtp=25 PortPop3=110 PortAdm=8025 DaysTrashMailbox=30 UnlimitedBoxsize=2048 PasswordMinLength=0 NextTryPOP3Remote=5 POP3RemoteThread=10 PailedMaxIries=3 NextTryInterval=10 SMTPMaxSize=512 SMTPMaxSize=512 SMTPMaxSend=500 PortS2nd=0 ESMTFF1ag=1 HelloString=%Domain% AllowNullMailFrom=0 PasswordLockEnable=1 AutoTrimExcel=0 SendMailThread=20 Pop3RemoteThread=5 NetworkTimeout=60 SaveToSentAll=1	
<	►

Figure 1-1

**POP3RemoteMaxOnce** means the maximum number of the remote received mails.

Pop3RemoteThread means the thread of "POP3 retrieve".

**Note:** The value of "Pop3RemoteThread" does not have to be too large. Normally, "20" to "30" is OK.

# 13.37 Method of Modify the Mailbox Size

Modify the mailbox size of single account

1) On the AAMail main interface, right click the account whose mailbox size needs to be modified, and then click the "Edit/View account" (Figure 1-1).

Account Status	Account	liser n	ame	Department	Tup	e	Inboy/All	lised	Batio	Volum
	Severuone@test.com	evenuc	ne	Department	Grou	ю	(3)	0300	TIGGO	[.1]
	2 1@test.com	admi	n		Acco	•₽ unt	1/1	0.1M	01%	1024
J V Jack Som	admin@test.com	Administ			11000	Imin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
	2 postmaster@test.com	Postma	2	New account New group	F2 F3	dmin	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	[-1]
		1		Edit/view account	t					1
			*	Delete account Find account	-					
				Clear sendings Clear mails Drop history mails						
				Send mail POP3 retrieve	<b>F7</b> F8					
	4			Group relations Supervising list Monitored list						
5:14:43]-[System] Ver=5.0.201308 5:14:44]-[System] Services: SendM 5:14:44]-[System] LAN=192.168.1.	11, Win7[64] - Access, Welco Iail(20), POP3Remote(5), Adm 218	me! in=8025, f	POP3	=110, SMTP1=25,	SMTP2	2=0				

Figure 1-1

2) In the pop up "Account" dialog box, select the "Limited (M)" check box, type the max mailbox size into the "Mailbox size" edit box, and click the "OK" button (Figure 1-2).

9	Account	admin	@ test.cor	n	7
Click for help	Password	•			
000010	User name	Administrato	r ja		
Disabled	Mailbox size	2048	Limited (N	0	
	Account alias		N. C.		
	Account type	Server admi	inistrator	•	
	Manager			<b>v</b>	

Figure 1-2

### Set the unified mailbox size for all accounts

1) On the main interface of AAMail, click the "Settings" button (Figure 1-3).

Account Osen name Department Type Indux All Osen Indux Other   I I Detest.com everyone Group (3) (3) [-1]   I Detest.com admin Account 1/1 0.1M 0.1% 1024   I Detest.com admin Account 1/1 0.1M 0.1% 2048   I Detest.com Administrator System admin 1/1 0.1M 0.1% 2048   I Detest.com Administrator System admin 1/1 0.1M 0.1% 2048   I Detest.com Postmaster Domain admin 1/1 0.1M 0.1% 2048   I Detest.com Postmaster Domain admin 1/1 0.1M 0.1% 2048   I Detest.com Postmaster Domain admin 1/1 0.1M 0.1% 1/1   I Detest.com Postmaster Domain admin 1/1 0.1M 0.1% 1/1   I Detest.com   I Detest.com	Account Statue	Assault	Harrison	Depertment	Tune	lub au 70 ll	Iteed	Datia	Mahana
Image: Second			Oser name	Department	Group	(2)	0260		[ 11
administrator System admin 1/1 0.1% 1024   admini@test.com Administrator System admin 1/1 0.1M 0.1% 1024   admin@test.com Postmaster Domain admin 1/1 0.1M 0.1% [-1]   admin@test.com Postmaster Intertext.com Intertext.com Intertext.com Intertext.com Intertext.com   admin@test.com <td>i 🥑 test.com</td> <td>2 1@test.com</td> <td>everyone</td> <td></td> <td>Account</td> <td>1/1</td> <td>0.1M</td> <td>0.1%</td> <td>10246</td>	i 🥑 test.com	2 1@test.com	everyone		Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	10246
▲ adminigrest.com Administrator System admin 1/1 0.1M 0.1% 2040   ▲ postmaster@test.com Postmaster Domain admin 1/1 0.1M 0.1% [-1]   ■ <td>🛨 😈 yaozni.com</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Account</td> <td>1/1</td> <td>0.1M</td> <td>0.1%</td> <td>20406</td>	🛨 😈 yaozni.com				Account	1/1	0.1M	0.1%	20406
postmaster@dest.com   Postmaster   Domain admin   1/1   U.1M   U.1%   [-1]     Image: Im			Administrator		System admin	171	0.1M	0.1%	20481
			Postmaster	-	Domain admin	171	U.IM	0.1%	<u></u>
		T							

Figure 1-3

2) In the pop up "Server settings" dialog box, click the "Account" tab. Then in the "Unlimited mailbox volume" edit box, modify its value to set the max mailbox size for all accounts (Figure 1-4).

9	Minimun password length 0	
U	Unlimited mailbox volume 2048 (M)	
Click for help	Keep mails in Trash mailbox 30 days	
	Keep Mails in Spam mailbox 30 days	
POP3 remo POP3 rem	te next check interval 5 minutes ote max retrieve once 10	

Figure 1-4

Note: After you set the unified mailbox size, it will apply to all accounts, so the mailbox size value which you have set for the single account before will be invalid.

### **13.38 Delete Scanned Virus Attachments**

If you run an antivirus program on AA Mail Server and it scanned some viruses on the attachments, you can use the following methods to delete them.

If you are using AA Mail Server latest version (5.0.2013XXXX), you can use the menu command "Clear sending messages".

If you are using AA Mail Server other versions, you could run "Tool => Advanced SQL Execute", and type "truncate table mailsent to delete all", or "delete from mailsent where mailfrom='...' and mailto='...'" in the "SQL statement" edit box to delete specific records.

### 13.39 Transfer and Upgrade AA Mail Server

#### Transfer

Suppose the original mail server is Machine A, the new mail server is Machine B.

If Machine A is based on Access database, please refer to following steps to transfer AA Mail Server.

1) Install new AA Mail Server on Machine B, quit after installed successfully.

2) Copy all the files in the installation directory of Machine A to cover all the corresponding directories and files on Machine B.

If Machine A is based on SQL Server database, please refer to following steps to transfer AA Mail Server.

1) Backup the data of AA Mail Server on machine A, how to backup AA Mail Server, please refer to Backup AA Mail Server.

2) Install the AA Mail Server on machine B, quit after installed successfully.

3) Copy all the backup data on Machine A to the installation directory of AA Mail Server on Machine B, and cover all the corresponding files.

4) Restore SQL Server database on Machine B, how to restore, please refer to Restore AA Mail Server.

5) Run AA Mail Server on Machine B to finish the transfer.

#### Upgrade

How to upgrade AA Mail Server, please read Notes about Upgrade firstly and refer to Upgrade Steps of AA Mail Server.

# 13.40 Add User-defined Server Welcome Message

You can specify the customized server welcome message command manually to protect your personal information. For details, please refer to the instructions as below.

1) Find the configuration file mailserver.ini in the installation directory of AA Mail Server.

2) Double click to open the mailserver.ini notepad.

3) Add the text "ServerResponse=..." under the [Setup]. For example, we make the server welcome message as "user-defined information" here (Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1

4) Save the change and close the notepad form.

5) Check whether the user-defined server welcome message works. In the "Start" menu-> "run"->"cmd", assuming that the server IP is 192.168.1.254, in the command line, type into "telnet 192.168.1.254 25" then press the "Enter" key. If the result is similar to the server welcome message that we add as above (Figure 1-2), it means add the userdefined server welcome message successfully.



Figure 1-2

# 13.41 Restore AA Mail Server

If your mail server is based on Access database, you only need to copy all the backup data to the installation directory of AA Mail Server, and cover all the corresponding files. If your mail server is based on SQL Server database, please cover and replace the installation directory of AA Mail Server with the backup data, and do the opertations as follows:

1) Open the SQL Server Management Studio Express, and "right click 'sqlmail'->All Tasks-> Attach Database..." (Figure 1-1)

🚡 SQL Server Enterprise Manager - [控制合根目录\Microsoft SQL Servers\SQL Server Group\(local) (Windows NT)\D 💶 🗆 🗙
Image: Big in the second s
• 控制合根目录  Databases 5 Items       • SQL Server Group     • Sql Server Group       • SQL Server Group     • model       • New Databases     • model       • Mex Databases     • Backup Database       • View     • Backup Database       • Yiew     • Backup Database       • Window from Here     • Backup Database       • Mew Window from Here     • Import Data       • Meta Data Services     • Gopy Database Wizard       • Meta Data Services     • WIN2003-ENT-32(YANG (Wir

Figure 1-1

2) Select the MDF file of database to attach ( such as "C:\AAMail\data\mail\sqlmail\_Data.MDF") in the pop up "Attach Database-(local)" dialog box, and then click the "OK" button to complete the process of attaching database (Figure 1-2).

MDF file of database to attacl C:\AAMail\data\mail\sqlmail_	n: _Data.MDF	y
Original File Name(s)	Current File(s) Location	
sqlmail_Data.MDF	🗹 C:\AAMail\data\mail\sqlmail_Data.MDF	
sqlmail_Log.LDF	C:\AAMail\data\mail\sqlmail_Log.LDF	
4	<u> </u>	ſ
Attach as:	sqlmail	_
- <u>S</u> pecify database owner:	sa	
	OK Cancel Help	

Figure 1-2

3) Run AA Mail Server and it restore to the backup state.

# 14 AAMail API

# 14.1 API of OA System

#### 1. Insert Webmail Login-box on Website

Suppose that the Webmail website is "http://xxx.com/mail", if you want to<u>insert Webmail</u> login-box on website, you can add the following codes on the website. <form action="http://xxx.com/mail" method=post> Full account: <input type=text name="fm\_strAccount"> Enter password: <input type=text name="fm\_strAccount"> Enter password: <input type=password name="fm\_strPassword"> <input type=submit value='login Webmail'> </Form>

#### 2. Synchronous Update the Modified OA System Password to AAMail

Suppose that the Webmail website is "http://xxx.com/mail", after modified the OA system password, you can synchronous update this password to AAMail via "password.asp". There are two ways to synchronous update the password, GET or POST.

### 2.1 Synchronous update the password with GET

http://xxx.com/mail/password.asp?

acc=ACCOUT&pwd=NEW\_PASSWORD&old=OLD\_PASSWORD&jump=1&url=URL "password.asp" reads the new and old password from URL. When the old password is tested successfully, then it can be modified to a new password. After the modification, it can be jumped to a specified page. Note that if the password contains special characters, such as "&", "/", "?" etc., then you have to encode the URL.

Parameter	Example	Description
acc	xxxx@test.com	Full account
pwd	654321	New password. Pay attention to encode the URL if there are special characters.
old	123456	Old password. Pay attention to encode the URL if there are special characters.
jump	0 or 1	Whether to jump page after the modification. The default value is "1".
url	login.asp	The target page which needs to be jumped after the modification. It can be blank.

2.2 Synchronous update the password with POST

http://xxx.com/mail/password.asp?jump=1

Synchronous update the password with POST can achieve the same function with GET method, but there will be four fields come from "password.asp" with POST method, they are, "fm\_strAccount", "fm\_strPassword", "fm\_strOldPassword" and "fm\_strGoBack".

Parameter	Example	Description
fm_strAccount	xxxx@test.com	Full account
fm_strPassword	654321	New password.
fm_strOldPassword	123456	Old password.
fm_strGoBank	login.asp	The target page which needs to be jumped after the modification. It can be blank.

### 3. Go to Webmail from the OA System Directly

Suppose that the Webmail website is "http://xxx.com/mail", if you want to add a link on OA system to allow users going to Webmail directly by clicking that link without repeatedly entering the username and password to login again, and send the username and password to "login.asp" to jump page with GET or POST method.

### 3.1 Jump to Webmail with GET

http://xxx.com/mail/login.asp?acc=ACCOUNT&pwd=PASSWORD&go=X

Because the URL address contains the plaintext password which will be displayed in the address bar, so jump to Webmail with GET method may reveal your password. If you have to use the GET method, we recommend you encrypt the password with MD5.

Parameter	Example	Description
acc	xxxx@test.com	Full account.
pwd	654321	Plaintext password or MD5 (password). Pay attention to encode the URL if there are special characters.
go	0/1/4	"0"="mailbox summary (default)", "1"="mailing list", "4"="compose mail".

### 3.2 Jump to Webmail with POST

http://xxx.com/login.asp?go=X

Convert the "onClick" of this link to POST via javascript, and send two fields to "login.asp", they are, "fm\_strAccount" and "fm\_strPassword".

Parameter	Example	Description
fm_strAccount	xxxx@test.com	Full account.
fm_strPassword	654321	Plaintext password or MD5 (password). Pay attention to encode the URL if there are special characters.

go	0/1/4	"0"="mailbox summary (default)", "1"="mailing
		list", "4"="compose mail".

#### 4. Notice New Mail

AAMail email messages are stored in the database, so the OA system can directly access the database to see whether there are new mails. We will introduce how to notice the new mails in details.

#### 4.1 AAMail Database Connection Parameters

AAMail database connection parameters are stored in the "[Database]" section of "c:\AAMail\data\mailserver.ini". OA system can directly access "mailserver.ini" and get AAMail database connection parameters.

Parameter	Description
DataSource=xxx\SQLExpress	SQL Server data source.
DatabaseName=sqlmail	AAMail database name, the default name is "sqImail".
AuthSSPI=1	Authentication method. "0"="username+password", "1"="Windows integration authentication".
Userld=sa	Account of SQL Server.
Password=12345678	Password of the account.

### 4.2 Get Message Info of the Account

AAMail stores mail messages in "WebReceive" table. The specific operations are as follows.

1) Get the total number of the mails: "select count(\*) from webreceive where account='xxx@xxx.com'".

2) Get the number of new mails: "select count(\*) from Webreceive where account='xxx@xxx.com' and isread=0".

### 5. Write a Database Record to Send Mails Directly

You can write a record to "WebSent" table to realize directly sending mails.

#### 5.1 AAMail Database Connection Parameters

AAMail database connection parameters are stored in the "[Database]" of "c:\AAMail\data\mailserver.ini". OA system can directly access "mailserver.ini" and get AAMail database connection parameters.

Parameter	Description	
DataSource=xxx\SQLExpress	SQL Server data source.	
DatabaseName=sqImail	AAMail database name, the default name is "sqImail".	
AuthSSPI=1	Authentication method.	
	"0"="username+password", integration authentication".	"1"="Windows
-------------------	--	--------------
Userld=sa	Account of SQL Server.	
Password=12345678	Password of the account.	

### 5.2 Write Websent Records to Send Mails Directly

AAMail sendings are stored in websent table, and a record stands for a pending sendings. OA mail system writes a websent record with an appropriate value to the database, and then AAMail will read this record and then perform mail encoding and send the mail.

Please see the following "Websent Value Explanatory Table". The "Mailld" is the unique ID, and the format of AAMail mail ID is "YYYYMMDD+NNNNNNN", that is, "Year Month Day + 8 sequence numbers". We recommend modifying the first two "YY" to "AA", that is, "AAYYMMDD+NNNNNNN", which will avoid repetition.

Field	Name	Туре	Value Description
Mailld	Mail ID	Varchar[16]	Primary key, such as "AA120101NNNNNN".
Account	Account	Varchar[255]	It must be full account, such as "xx@123.com".
Manager	Manager Account	Varchar[255]	Empty
IPaddress	IP Address	Varchar[64]	Empty
MailSize	Mail Size	Int	0
MailFrom	Sender	Nvarchar[255]	It can be full account, e.g. "XX" < xx@123.com&gt.
MailTo	Recipient	Ntext	One recipient, or multiple recipients separated by comma.
MailCc	Carbon Copy	NText	One recipient, or multiple recipients separated by comma.
MailBcc	Blind Carbon Copy	NText	One recipient, or multiple recipients separated by comma.
MailDate	Mail Date	Varchar[32]	YYYY-MM-DD HH:NN:SS
MailSubject	Mail Subject	NText	Less than 1024.
MailBodyType	Mail Body Type	Int	Choose one type between "0=TEXT mail" and "1=HTML mail".
MailBodyText	Mail Body Text	NText	Related to "MailBodyType".
MailBodyHtml	Mail Body Html	NText	Related to "MailBodyType".

#### WebSent Value Explanatory Table

attachmentflag	Attachment Flag	Int	"0=No attachment", "2=Attachment".
checkupstatus	Checkup Status	Int	0
savetodraft	Save to Draft	Int	0
savetosent	Save to Sent	Int	"0= Do not save to Sent", "1=Save to Sent".
priority	Urgent or not	Int	"0=Normal", "1=Urgent".
MailStatus	Sending Flag	Int	1
replyto	Reply to	Nvarchar[255]	Empty
isneedreceipt	Receipt Flag	Int	"0=Do not ask for receipt", "1= Ask for receipt".
sendtype	Send Type	Int	0
Sendtime	Send Time	Varchar[32]	YYYY-MM-DD HH:NN:SS

#### 5.3 Send a Mail with Attachment

It is a little more complex when send a mail with attachments. You need to write two records, they are, websent and websentattach. Suppose that a new mail's mail ID is "AA12010100000001", and this mail has two attachments, such as "xxxx.doc" and "yyy.xls".

1) Generate specified attachment names for these two attachments, such as "AA12010100000001\_0001.dat" and "AA1201010000001\_0002.dat".

2) Generate a new file for "xxx.doc", such as "c:\AAMail\data\mail\000000\ AA12010100000001\_0001.dat". Write "\r\n\r\n" four bytes into the new file firstly, and then read the content of "xxx.doc" file and append to it.

3) Write a record to websentattach table for "xxx.doc". For the specific value, please see the table below.

4) Generate a new file for "yyy.xls", such as "c:\AAMail\data\mail\000000\AA1201010000001\_0002.dat". Write "\r\n\r\n" four bytes to the new file, and then read the conent of "yyy.xls" file and append to it.

5) Write a record to websentattach table for "yyy.xls". For the specific value, please see the table below.

6) Write a record to websent table according to "5.2 Write Websent Records to Send Mails Directly". Note that the value of "attachmentflag" must be set as "2" to indicate that this mail has attachments.

Field	Name	Туре	Value Description
Maild	Mail ID	Varchar[255]	Primary key, such as "AA12010100000001".
AttachId	Attachment ID	Varchar[16]	Primary key, "0001" or "0002" etc.
Account	Account	Varchar[255]	It must be full account, such as

WebSentAttach Value Explanatory Table

			"xx@123.com".
Location	Location	Int	0
Direction	Direction	Int	0
Attachtype	Attachment Type	Int	0
ContentType	Content Type	Varchar[255]	Attachment content type, such as "application/octet-stream".
AttachSize	Attachment Size	Int	The original size of the attachment.
AttachName	Attachment Name	Nvarchar[255]	Attachment name.
StartTime	Upload Time	Varchar[32]	Empty

# 14.2 Database Table

AAMail mail server will store the received mails and attachments in the following tables. Mail: WebReceive (merge mode), XNNNNNMail (detach mode) Attachment: WebRecvAttach (merge mode), XNNNNNAttach (detach mode)

For details of merge mode, please refer to "Method of Merging Database".

# 14.3 Database Table Problem

### 1. Error Message

### Problem:

Received an error message like:

"\*select\* from X000005Mail where (account='pluto@fastmail.numeria.net') and (mailtype=0 or mailtype=1 or mailtype=4 or mailtype=5) and (folder=0) and (1=1) order by maildate desc". After verifying SQL communications, when creating the user from AAMail interface, it does not send any command to create tables as X00000?Mail.

## Solution:

1) Please use the latest version of AAMail, and all users' mail data will be stored into "WebReceive" and "WebRecvAttach", if installed a fresh one as default.

2) For old users, there is a merge function to merge all user tables into one: "Operation
=> Upgrade => Store all mails into one table". --- XNNNNNMail as well as required subfolder and other information has been created by the AAMail background service.

3) "web\include\class\_database.asp" reads database connection value from "[Database]"

section of "data\mailserver.ini" automatically.

## 2. Delete Command

#### Question:

How can I delete a million of messages which are in the mail sent table without time out? **Answer:** 

You can use "truncate table mailsent" and "truncate table websent" commands to realize deleting these messages quickly without time out.